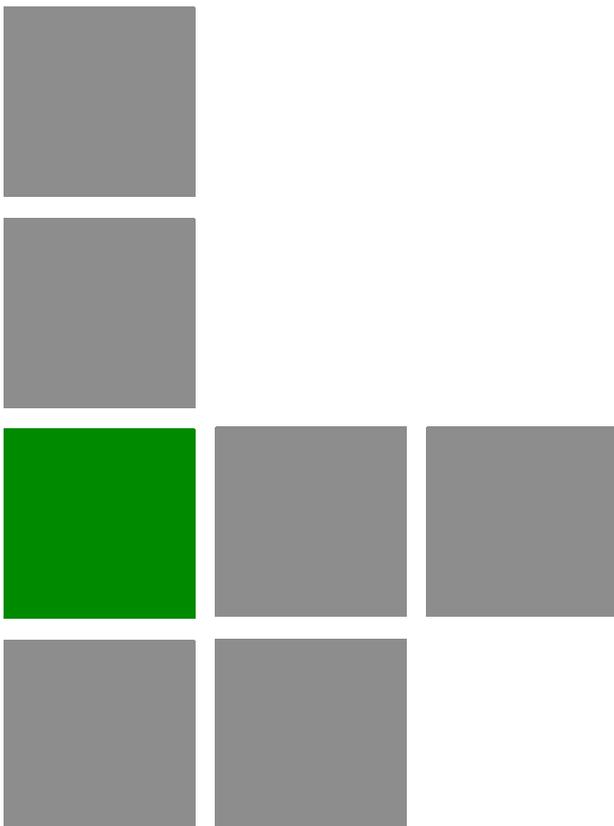


BreezeMAX[®] FDD Micro Base Station



System Manual

Software Version 3.7
January 2009
P/N 215213

Document History

Topic	Description	Date Issued
General	Base Station, Micro Base Station and CPE have been divided to separate manuals	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
New Radio Bands Sections 1.1 , 1.5.1	New ODUs that support 3.3g, 3.6a and 3.6b frequency bands	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Monitor/Telnet access Sections 4.2.1 , 4.4.2.1	3 access levels: Administrator, Installer, Monitor	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Per Trap Configuration Section 4.4.4.4	Per trap configuration of Admin Status, Severity and Suppression Interval	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Multi Channels Sections 4.5 , 4.5 , 4.7	Support of Multi-Channels. Radio Cluster, ODU, and Channel entities, including new and modified parameters.	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Frequency Bands File Section 4.6.5	Separating availability of radio bands (new HW) from SW releases.	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Cumulative Power On Time Sections 4.4.1 , 4.8.5.1	Display of the cumulative power on time.	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Additional Back-Up Files Section 4.4.2.5	Create/download Back Up Files for Filtering parameters (including MAC Address Deny List) and for Trap Configuration.	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Performance Monitoring Sections 4.4.5 , 4.8.5.4 , 4.9.4.3.2	Improved counters for Management Port, Data & Wireless Ports, SU and Service	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Hybrid VLAN Mode Sections 4.9.1.5 , 4.9.4.3.1.6	Enabling classification of both tagged and untagged frames	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
VLAN Transparency Mode Sections 4.9.1.5 , 4.9.4.4.3	Defining the method of transferring packets to the operator's upstream network	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Multicast VLAN Sections 4.9.1.5 , 4.9.4.5.6	Modified functionality. The feature is needed only to support multiple VLANs behind SUs that use a SW version below 2.0. In SW version 2.0 and higher the SU handles multiple VLANs by properly duplicating messages.	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
DRAP TTL Retries Section 4.4.3.6	Parameter added in formal release of SW version 1.5, defining the maximum time before "dropping" the gateway.	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
SU Service Fault Status Section 4.8.1	Indication of reason for service denial: Loop problem or SU Duplicate Name	SW Version 2.0, February 2005

Topic	Description	Date Issued
Configurable SU Name Section 4.8.5.3.1.1	To enable a solution to situations with Duplicate SU Names	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
SU Estimated Distance Section 4.8.1	Displaying for each SU its estimated distance from the Base Station	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
MAC Addresses Behind SU Section 4.8.5.5	Displaying the list of MAC Addresses (and VLAN IDs if applicable) of devices behind SU	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Filtering Sections 4.9.2 , 4.9.4.8 , 4.9.4.9 , 4.9.4.10	Controlling traffic by forwarding/discarding packets according to a set of rules. Support of L2 and L3/L4 filters. Filtering is per interface (from either network or wireless side)	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
MAC Address Deny List Sections 4.9.2 , 4.9.4.11	Controlling traffic by discarding packets to/from specific MAC Addresses	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Bridge Aging Time (Micro Base Station) Section 4.4.3.5	Option of No Aging Time (null entry) added.	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
Traps and Alarms	The Traps and Alarms appendix (formerly Appendix D) was removed from the manual	SW Version 2.0, February 2006
AU-ODU-HP	New Product	SW Version 2.5, June 2006
ODU-Power Feeder	New Product	SW Version 2.5, June 2006
Licenses support Sections 4.4.6 and 4.8.5.3.9 .	New feature	SW Version 2.5, June 2006
Debug Stream “ Debug Stream ” on page 82	New feature	SW Version 2.5, June 2006
Transparent Forwarding Rule Table 4-21	No editing of Transparent Forwarding Rule Name.	SW Version 2.5, June 2006
BER Test	The BER Test feature was removed.	SW Version 2.5, June 2006
QinQ Section 4.9.4.12	New feature	SW Version 2.6 October 2006
Data Port Management VLAN Section 4.4.3.3.4	Update: The parameter is updated in run-time.	SW Version 2.6 October 2006

Topic	Description	Date Issued
Parameters Summary Section 4.10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ QinQ parameters added ■ Data Port Management VLAN parameter is updated in run-time. ■ Data Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable and Management Port Management Traffic Enable Disable are updated in run-time. 	SW Version 2.6 October 2006
Micro Base Station IDU to AU-ODU Communication (Section 1.5.6) and IF Cables Requirements (Table 2-2)	Updated Maximum IF cable Attenuation specifications for AU-ODU-HP	SW Version 2.6 October 2006
Micro Base Station Antennas Table 1-7 and Table 1-17	Added BS ANT 90V/3.3-3.7	SW Version 2.6 October 2006
DUET 6004 Section 1.3.1	Added description of a new optional Access Gateway	SW Version 2.6 October 2006
Book Title	Changed to BreezeMAX FDD Micro Base Station System Manual	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
SU Types Section 4.8.1	Updated SU Types	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
SUID Section 4.8.1 , Section 4.8.5.1	New parameter	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
SU Show Menu Section 4.8.5.1	Updated	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
Set Minimum Data Rates Section 4.8.5.3.4 , Section 4.10	New feature	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
Statistics Collection Interval Section 4.4.3.1.6 , Section 4.10	New parameter	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
AU-ODU Tx Power parameter Section 4.6.4.4	Updated description	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
Radio Cluster Location Section 4.5.4.3 , Section 4.10	Updated (0 to 255 characters, default is null)	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
AU-ODU Tx Power Range Section 1.2.2 , Section 1.5.1	Updated	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
Single Device Manager Section 1.4.2	Updated	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
Minimum distance between diversity antennas Section 2.1.2	Added information	SW Version 3.0 April 2007

Topic	Description	Date Issued
Diversity support Section 1.2.1 , Section 4.7.3 , Section 4.10	New feature	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
“H” Installation Accessory Section 2.1.1 , Section 2.1.2	New optional accessory for installation of multiple AU-ODUs and antennas serving the same sector.	SW Version 3.0 April 2007
Antennas Specifications Sections 1.5.4 , 1.5.11.4	Updates	SW Version 3.0 June 2007
Forwarding Rule selection in Service Profile Section 4.9.4.4.7	Updated description: L2 Forwarding Rule can be used in a Voice Service Profile, and vice versa	SW Version 3.0 June 2007
Unicast Relaying Section 4.9.4.5.3	Updated description: Applicable only for L2 Forwarding Rules. Added defaults for Voice and PPPoE Forwarding Rules.	SW Version 3.0 June 2007
Broadcast Relaying Section 4.9.4.5.4	Updated description: Applicable only for L2 Forwarding Rules. Added defaults for Voice and PPPoE Forwarding Rules.	SW Version 3.0 June 2007
Unknown Forwarding Policy Section 4.9.4.5.5	Updated description: Applicable only for L2 Forwarding Rules. Added defaults for Voice and PPPoE Forwarding Rules.	SW Version 3.0 June 2007
Deleting an SU from the database Section 4.8.5.6	Update description: only disconnected SUs can be deleted.	SW Version 3.0 June 2007
Forwarding Rules functionality Section 4.9.1.1	Updated description	SW Version 3.0 June 2007
L2, PPPoE and VoIP Services functionality Section 4.9.1.2	Updated descriptions	SW Version 3.0 June 2007
Distance between antennas serving the same sector Section 2.1.2	Updated	SW Version 3.0 August 2007
Four-Channels Micro Base Station Sections 1.2.1 , 1.2.2 , 1.2.3 , 2.2.2 , 2.2.3 , 4.4.1 , 4.7.3	New hardware	SW Version 3.5 November 2007
Licenses Section 4.4.6	Base Station license for unlimited bandwidth for all CPEs has been removed (this license is not available currently)	SW Version 3.5 November 2007
Local Clock Setting Section 4.4.3.1.3	New feature	SW Version 3.5 November 2007
Maximum Cell Radius Section 4.7.1.3	Updated and added values for 7 MHz bandwidth. Added Actual Maximum Cell Distance (new parameter)	SW Version 3.5 November 2007

Topic	Description	Date Issued
SU Types Section 4.8.5.1	Updated available SU types	SW Version 3.5 November 2007
Bandwidth Sections 4.7.2.1 , 4.8.5.3.3.1	7 MHz bandwidth support	SW Version 3.5 November 2007
ARQ mechanism Section 4.7.1.2	Description of enhanced ARQ mechanism	SW Version 3.5 November 2007
Service Counters Section 4.9.4.3.2	Updated descriptions of Bytes Discarded and Packets Discarded. Names of Bytes/Packets Dropped counters has been changed to Bytes/Fragments Dropped from ARQ Queue. Functionality has changed. New counters: Bytes Received, Bytes Sent to Ethernet, Packets Sent to Ethernet.	SW Version 3.5 November 2007
Sensitivity and Gross Capacity Table 1.5.2 , Table 1.5.3	New tables (separated from Radio Specifications Table, added specifications for 7 MHz	SW Version 3.5 November 2007
Uplink (Tx) Power in SU Section 4.8.5.3.3.2 .	Updated functionality (not applicable when Frequency Scanning is enabled)	SW Version 3.6 April 2008
Best BST/AU Section 4.8.5.3.10 , Table 4-23	New feature	SW Version 3.6 April 2008
Radio Parameters Section 4.8.5.3.11 , Table 4-23	New feature (Frequency Scanning)	SW Version 3.6 April 2008
DRAP Signaling QoS Profile Section 4.4.3.6.2 , Table 4-23	New feature	SW Version 3.6 April 2008
Base Station ID and Base Station ID Mask Section 4.8.5.3.2	Updated functionality (identical to BST/AU ID and BST/AU ID Mask in Best BST/AU Parameters)	SW Version 3.6 April 2008
Service Group Sections 4.9.4.4.10 , 4.9.4.13 , Table 4-23 .	New feature	SW Version 3.6 April 2008
IF Cables Section 2.1.3	Only double-shielded cables should be used	SW Version 3.6 April 2008
NPU Performance Monitoring - Other Counters Section 4.4.5.5	New DHCP Option 82 related counters	SW Version 3.6 May 2008

Topic	Description	Date Issued
SU MAC Parameters Section 4.8.5.3.2	Added updated description of search mechanism when Best BST/AU Support is disabled.	SW Version 3.6.2 August 2008
SU Best BST/AU Section 4.8.5.3.10 , Table 4-23	Updated description of search mechanism.	SW Version 3.6.2 August 2008
SU Bandwidth Sections 4.8.5.3.3.1 , 4.8.5.3.11.1	Updated functionality	SW Version 3.6.2 August 2008
SU Frequency Scanning Section 4.8.5.3.11.2	Updated description	SW Version 3.6.2 August 2008
SU Discrete Frequencies Section 4.8.5.3.11.3	Updated functionality (scanning in all bandwidths)	SW Version 3.6.2 August 2008
SU Frequency Scanning-Admin Status Sections 4.8.5.3.11.2.1 , 4.8.5.3.11.2.2 , Table 4-23	New parameter	SW Version 3.6.2 August 2008
IF Cables Table 2-3	Added LMR-600	SW Version 3.7 September 2008
SU IDU Types/Gateways Types Sections 4.8.1 , 4.8.5.3.5	Updated	SW Version 3.7 September 2008
Local Clock Setting Section 4.4.3.1.3 , Table 4-23	Added SNTP support	SW Version 3.7 September 2008
PMTM Section 4.4.3.1.7 , Table 4-23	New feature	SW Version 3.7 September 2008
Spectrum Analyzer Section 4.4.5.3	New feature	SW Version 3.7 September 2008
BER Test Section 4.4.5.4	New feature	SW Version 3.7 September 2008
Show Associated SUs Section 4.7.3.3	New feature	SW Version 3.7 September 2008
Managed VoIP Service Sections 4.7.5.1 , 4.8.1 , 4.8.5.3.5 , 4.9.1.2.4 , 4.9.1.4 , 4.9.1.5 , 4.9.4.1.2.2 , 4.9.4.3.1.6 , 4.9.4.4.2 , 4.9.4.4.4 , 4.9.4.4.8 , 4.9.4.4.9 , 4.9.4.4.11 , 4.9.4.5 , 4.9.4.5.2 , 4.9.4.5.3 , 4.9.4.5.4 , 4.9.4.5.5 , 4.9.4.6 , 4.9.4.14 , 4.9.5 , Table 4-23	New feature	SW Version 3.7 September 2008
Defining Services Section 4.9.5	Updated	SW Version 3.7 September 2008

Topic	Description	Date Issued
Data Port Management VLAN Section 4.4.3.3.4	Used also for communication with SNTP and PF servers	SW Version 3.7 September 2008
Pre-Configured Forwarding Rules Table 4-12	Update: In Internet Access PPPoE Pre-Configured Forwarding Rule the the Unknown Forwarding Policy is hard-coded to Reject	SW Version 3.7 September 2008

Legal Rights

© Copyright 2008 Alvarion Ltd. All rights reserved.

The material contained herein is proprietary, privileged, and confidential and owned by Alvarion or its third party licensors. No disclosure thereof shall be made to third parties without the express written permission of Alvarion Ltd.

Alvarion Ltd. reserves the right to alter the equipment specifications and descriptions in this publication without prior notice. No part of this publication shall be deemed to be part of any contract or warranty unless specifically incorporated by reference into such contract or warranty.

Trade Names

Alvarion[®], BreezeCOM[®], WALKair[®], WALKnet[®], BreezeNET[®], BreezeACCESS[®], BreezeLINK[®], BreezeMAX[®], BreezeLITE[®], BreezePHONE[®], 4Motion[®], BreezeCONFIG[™], AlvariSTAR[™], AlvariCRAFT[™], MGW[™], eMGW[™] and/or other products and/or services referenced here in are either registered trademarks, trademarks or service marks of Alvarion Ltd.

All other names are or may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

“WiMAX Forum” is a registered trademark of the WiMAX Forum. “WiMAX,” the WiMAX Forum logo, “WiMAX Forum Certified,” and the WiMAX Forum Certified logo are trademarks of the WiMAX Forum.

Statement of Conditions

The information contained in this manual is subject to change without notice. Alvarion Ltd. shall not be liable for errors contained herein or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this manual or equipment supplied with it.

Warranties and Disclaimers

All Alvarion Ltd. ("Alvarion") products purchased from Alvarion or through any of Alvarion's authorized resellers are subject to the following warranty and product liability terms and conditions.

Exclusive Warranty

(a) Alvarion warrants that the Product hardware it supplies and the tangible media on which any software is installed, under normal use and conditions, will be free from significant defects in materials and workmanship for a period of fourteen (14) months from the date of shipment of a given Product to Purchaser (the "Warranty Period"). Alvarion will, at its sole option and as Purchaser's sole

remedy, repair or replace any defective Product in accordance with Alvarion' standard R&R procedure.

(b) With respect to the Firmware, Alvarion warrants the correct functionality according to the attached documentation, for a period of fourteen (14) month from invoice date (the "Warranty Period"). During the Warranty Period, Alvarion may release to its Customers firmware updates, which include additional performance improvements and/or bug fixes, upon availability (the "Warranty"). Bug fixes, temporary patches and/or workarounds may be supplied as Firmware updates.

Additional hardware, if required, to install or use Firmware updates must be purchased by the Customer. Alvarion will be obligated to support solely the two (2) most recent Software major releases.

ALVARION SHALL NOT BE LIABLE UNDER THIS WARRANTY IF ITS TESTING AND EXAMINATION DISCLOSE THAT THE ALLEGED DEFECT IN THE PRODUCT DOES NOT EXIST OR WAS CAUSED BY PURCHASER'S OR ANY THIRD PERSON'S MISUSE, NEGLIGENCE, IMPROPER INSTALLATION OR IMPROPER TESTING, UNAUTHORIZED ATTEMPTS TO REPAIR, OR ANY OTHER CAUSE BEYOND THE RANGE OF THE INTENDED USE, OR BY ACCIDENT, FIRE, LIGHTNING OR OTHER HAZARD.

Disclaimer

(a) The Software is sold on an "AS IS" basis. Alvarion, its affiliates or its licensors MAKE NO WARRANTIES, WHATSOEVER, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE AND THE ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTATION. ALVARION SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE. UNITS OF PRODUCT (INCLUDING ALL THE SOFTWARE) DELIVERED TO PURCHASER HEREUNDER ARE NOT FAULT-TOLERANT AND ARE NOT DESIGNED, MANUFACTURED OR INTENDED FOR USE OR RESALE IN APPLICATIONS WHERE THE FAILURE, MALFUNCTION OR INACCURACY OF PRODUCTS CARRIES A RISK OF DEATH OR BODILY INJURY OR SEVERE PHYSICAL OR ENVIRONMENTAL DAMAGE ("HIGH RISK ACTIVITIES"). HIGH RISK ACTIVITIES MAY INCLUDE, BUT ARE NOT LIMITED TO, USE AS PART OF ON-LINE CONTROL SYSTEMS IN HAZARDOUS ENVIRONMENTS REQUIRING FAIL-SAFE PERFORMANCE, SUCH AS IN THE OPERATION OF NUCLEAR FACILITIES, AIRCRAFT NAVIGATION OR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS, AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL, LIFE SUPPORT MACHINES, WEAPONS SYSTEMS OR OTHER APPLICATIONS REPRESENTING A SIMILAR DEGREE OF POTENTIAL HAZARD. ALVARION SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR HIGH RISK ACTIVITIES.

(b) PURCHASER'S SOLE REMEDY FOR BREACH OF THE EXPRESS WARRANTIES ABOVE SHALL BE REPLACEMENT OR REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE AS SPECIFIED ABOVE, AT ALVARION'S OPTION. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE WARRANTIES AND REMEDIES SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT ARE EXCLUSIVE AND IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EITHER IN FACT OR BY OPERATION OF LAW, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES, TERMS OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, CORRESPONDENCE WITH DESCRIPTION, NON-INFRINGEMENT, AND ACCURACY OF INFORMATION GENERATED. ALL OF WHICH ARE EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. ALVARION' WARRANTIES HEREIN RUN ONLY TO PURCHASER, AND ARE NOT EXTENDED TO ANY THIRD PARTIES. ALVARION NEITHER ASSUMES NOR AUTHORIZES ANY OTHER PERSON TO ASSUME FOR IT ANY OTHER LIABILITY IN CONNECTION WITH THE SALE, INSTALLATION, MAINTENANCE OR USE OF ITS PRODUCTS.

Limitation of Liability

(a) ALVARION SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO THE PURCHASER OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY, FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF USE, INTERRUPTION OF BUSINESS OR FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, WHETHER ARISING UNDER BREACH OF CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), STRICT LIABILITY OR OTHERWISE AND WHETHER BASED ON THIS AGREEMENT OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

(b) TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL THE LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES HEREUNDER OF ALVARION OR ITS EMPLOYEES OR AGENTS EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID FOR THE PRODUCT BY PURCHASER, NOR SHALL THE AGGREGATE LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES TO ALL PARTIES REGARDING ANY PRODUCT EXCEED THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID FOR THAT PRODUCT BY THAT PARTY (EXCEPT IN THE CASE OF A BREACH OF A PARTY'S CONFIDENTIALITY OBLIGATIONS).

Radio Frequency Interference Statement

The **Subscriber Unit** equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to ETSI EN 301 489-1 rules and Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a residential environment notwithstanding use in commercial, business and industrial environments. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

The **Base Station** equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class A digital device, pursuant to ETSI EN 301 489-1 rules and Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in commercial, business and industrial environments. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at the user's own expense.

FCC Radiation Hazard Warning

Base Station - To comply with FCC RF exposure requirements in Section 1.1307 and 2.1091 of FCC Rules, the antenna used for this transmitter must be fixed-mounted on outdoor permanent structures with a separation distance of at least 2 meter from all persons and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Indoor CPE - To comply with FCC RF exposure requirements in Section 1.1307 and 2.1091 of FCC Rules, the antenna used for this transmitter must be kept at a separation distance of at least 20 cm from all persons and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Outdoor CPE - To comply with FCC RF exposure requirements in Section 1.1307 and 2.1091 of FCC Rules, the antenna be used for this transmitter must be fixed-mounted on outdoor permanent structures with a separation distance of at least 120 cm from all persons and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

R&TTE Compliance Statement

This equipment complies with the appropriate essential requirements of Article 3 of the R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC.

Safety Considerations - General

For the following safety considerations, "Instrument" means the BreezeMAX units' components and their cables.

Grounding

Micro Base Stations, Power Feeders and outdoor units are required to be bonded to protective grounding using the bonding stud or screw provided with each unit.

The Micro Base Station and Power Feeder shall be bonded to earth at final installation.

Safety Considerations - DC Powered Equipment (μ BST & Power Feeder)

Restricted Access Area: The DC powered equipment should only be installed in a Restricted Access Area.

Installation Codes: The equipment must be installed according to the latest edition of the country national electrical codes. For North America, equipment must be installed in accordance with the US National Electrical Code and the Canadian Electrical Code.

Overcurrent Protection: A readily accessible Listed branch circuit overcurrent protective device, rated 20A, must be incorporated in the building wiring.

CAUTION: This equipment is designed to permit connection between the earthed conductor of the DC supply circuit and the grounding conductor at the equipment. See installation instructions.

- The equipment must be connected directly to the DC Supply System grounding electrode conductor.
- All equipment in the immediate vicinity must be grounded in the same way, and not be grounded elsewhere.
- The DC supply system is to be local, i.e. within the same premises as the equipment.
- There shall be no disconnect device between the grounded circuit conductor of the DC source (return) and the point of connection of the grounding electrode conductor.

Lithium Battery

The battery in the Micro Base Station is not intended for replacement.

Caution

To avoid electrical shock, do not perform any servicing unless you are qualified to do so.

Line Voltage

Before connecting this instrument to the power line, make sure that the voltage of the power source matches the requirements of the instrument.

Radio

The instrument transmits radio energy during normal operation. To avoid possible harmful exposure to this energy, do not stand or work for extended periods of time in front of its antenna. The long term characteristics or the possible physiological

effects of radio frequency electromagnetic fields have not been yet fully investigated.

Outdoor Units and Antennas Installation and Grounding

Ensure that outdoor units, antennas and supporting structures are properly installed to eliminate any physical hazard to either people or property. Make sure that the installation of the outdoor unit, antenna and cables is performed in accordance with all relevant national and local building and safety codes. Even where grounding is not mandatory according to applicable regulation and national codes, it is highly recommended to ensure that the outdoor unit and the antenna mast (when using external antenna) are grounded and suitable lightning protection devices are used so as to provide protection against voltage surges and static charges. In any event, Alvarion is not liable for any injury, damage or regulation violations associated with or caused by installation, grounding or lightning protection.

Disposal of Electronic and Electrical Waste



Disposal of Electronic and Electrical Waste

Pursuant to the WEEE EU Directive electronic and electrical waste must not be disposed of with unsorted waste. Please contact your local recycling authority for disposal of this product.

Important Notice

This user manual is delivered subject to the following conditions and restrictions:

- This manual contains proprietary information belonging to Alvarion Ltd. Such information is supplied solely for the purpose of assisting authorized users of the respective Alvarion products.
- No part of its contents may be used for any other purpose, disclosed to any person or firm or reproduced by any means, electronic and mechanical, without the express prior written permission of Alvarion Ltd.
- The text and graphics are for the purpose of illustration and reference only. The specifications on which they are based are subject to change without notice.
- The software described in this document is furnished under a license. The software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of that license.
- Information in this document is subject to change without notice.
- Corporate and individual names and data used in examples herein are fictitious unless otherwise noted.
- Alvarion Ltd. reserves the right to alter the equipment specifications and descriptions in this publication without prior notice. No part of this publication shall be deemed to be part of any contract or warranty unless specifically incorporated by reference into such contract or warranty.
- The information contained herein is merely descriptive in nature, and does not constitute an offer for the sale of the product described herein.
- Any changes or modifications of equipment, including opening of the equipment not expressly approved by Alvarion Ltd. will void equipment warranty and any repair thereafter shall be charged for. It could also void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Some of the equipment provided by Alvarion and specified in this manual, is manufactured and warranted by third parties. All such equipment must be installed and handled in full compliance with the instructions provided by such manufacturers as attached to this manual or provided thereafter by Alvarion or the manufacturers. Non-compliance with such instructions may result in serious damage and/or bodily harm and/or void the user's authority to operate the equipment and/or revoke the warranty provided by such manufacturer.

About This Manual

This manual describes the BreezeMAX ("BreezeMAX") Micro Base Station with SW version 3.7 and details how to install, operate and manage the system components.

This manual is intended for technicians responsible for installing, setting and operating the BreezeMAX Micro Base Station system, and for system administrators responsible for managing the system.

This manual contains the following chapters and appendices:

- **Chapter 1 - System description:** Describes the BreezeMAX system and its components.
- **Chapter 2 - Installation:** Describes how to install the Micro Base Station system components.
- **Chapter 3 - Commissioning:** Describes how to configure basic parameters and validate unit operation.
- **Chapter 4 - Operation and Administration:** Describes how to use the Monitor application for configuring parameters, checking system status and monitoring performance.
- **Appendix A - Software Upgrade:** Describes how to load new software files using TFTP, and how to switch to a new software version in BreezeMAX units.
- **Appendix B - Defining Service Profiles for Generic VoIP Gateways:** Describes the principles of defining Service Profiles for 3rd party generic (non DRAP based) VoIP devices.
- **Glossary:** A listing of commonly used terms.

Contents

Chapter 1 - System Description	1
1.1 Introducing BreezeMAX.....	3
1.2 The Micro Base Station.....	6
1.2.1 Micro Base Station Indoor Unit	6
1.2.2 AU-ODU	8
1.2.3 Power Feeder.....	8
1.3 Networking Equipment	9
1.3.1 DUET 6004 Access Gateway.....	9
1.4 Management Systems.....	10
1.4.1 AlvariSTAR.....	10
1.4.2 AlvariCRAFT	11
1.5 Specifications	13
1.5.1 Radio.....	13
1.5.2 Sensitivity	14
1.5.3 Gross Capacity.....	14
1.5.4 Micro Base Station Antennas (optional).....	14
1.5.5 Data Communication (Ethernet Ports)	15
1.5.6 Micro Base Station IDU to AU-ODU Communication.....	15
1.5.7 Configuration and Management.....	16
1.5.8 Standards Compliance, General	16
1.5.9 Environmental	17
1.5.10 Services	17
1.5.11 Physical and Electrical	18
Chapter 2 - Installation Guidelines	21
2.1 Installing the AU-ODU.....	23
2.1.1 AU-ODU Installation Requirements	23
2.1.2 Guidelines for Positioning the AU-ODU	24
2.1.3 IF Cables.....	25
2.1.4 Pole Mounting the ODU	26

2.1.5	AU-ODU	31
2.1.6	Connecting the Cables	32
2.2	Installing the Micro Base Station Equipment	33
2.2.1	Installation Requirements	33
2.2.2	The Micro Base Station Front Panel	34
2.2.3	Installing the Micro Base Station Unit	36
2.3	Installing the ODU Power Feeder	38
2.3.1	Installation Requirements	38
2.3.2	The ODU Power Feeder	38
2.3.3	Installing the ODU Power Feeder	40
Chapter 3	- Commissioning	42
3.1	Configuring Basic Parameters of Micro Base Station	44
3.2	Operation Verification	47
3.2.1	AU-ODU LEDs	47
3.2.2	Micro Base Station LEDs	47
3.2.3	ODU Power Feeder LEDs	48
3.2.4	Verifying the Ethernet Connection	49
Chapter 4	- Operation and Administration	50
4.1	BreezeMAX System Management	52
4.2	The Monitor Program	54
4.2.1	Accessing the Monitor Program	54
4.2.2	Using the Monitor Program	55
4.3	The Micro Base Station's Main Menu	58
4.3.1	Micro Base Station Menu	58
4.3.2	Radio Cluster Menu	58
4.3.3	ODU Menu	58
4.3.4	Access Parameters Menu	58
4.3.5	SU Menu	59
4.3.6	Services Menu	59
4.3.7	Exit	59
4.4	Micro Base Station Menu	60
4.4.1	Show	60
4.4.2	Unit Control	64

4.4.3	Configuration	69
4.4.4	Alarms and Traps	83
4.4.5	Performance Monitoring	86
4.4.6	Licenses	92
4.5	Radio Cluster Menu	96
4.5.1	Show Summary	96
4.5.2	Select	96
4.5.3	Add	97
4.5.4	Radio Cluster Parameters	97
4.6	ODU Menu	99
4.6.1	Show Summary	99
4.6.2	Select	100
4.6.3	Add	101
4.6.4	ODU Parameters	101
4.6.5	Frequency Bands File and Frequency Bands Groups	102
4.7	Access Parameters Menu	104
4.7.1	MAC Parameters	104
4.7.2	Phy Parameters	106
4.7.3	Multi Channel Parameters	106
4.7.4	Multirate Parameters	109
4.7.5	Voice Parameters	111
4.8	SU Menu	112
4.8.1	Show Summary	112
4.8.2	SW Files in mBST	114
4.8.3	Select by Name	115
4.8.4	Select by MAC Address	115
4.8.5	SU # Menu	115
4.8.6	Add New SU	138
4.9	Services Menu	139
4.9.1	Introduction to Services	139
4.9.2	Introduction to Filtering Features	146
4.9.3	Common Operations in Services Menu	147
4.9.4	The Services Menu	148
4.9.5	Defining Services	184

4.9.6 Pre-configured Profiles.....	185
4.10 Parameters Summary.....	192
Appendix A - Software Upgrade	208
A.1 Before you Start	210
A.2 File Loading Procedure	211
A.3 Completing the Software Upgrade (Switching Versions).....	213
Appendix B - Defining Service Profiles for Generic VoIP Gateways .	214
B.1 Introduction	216
B.1.1 Priority Marking	216
B.1.2 General Assumptions.....	216
B.2 1 POTS Basic VoIP G.729 Service Profile	218
B.2.1 Service Characteristics	218
B.2.2 RTP BW Calculation	218
B.2.3 RTCP BW Calculation.....	218
B.2.4 QoS Profile.....	218
B.3 1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.729 Service Profile.....	220
B.3.1 Service Characteristics	220
B.3.2 Voice RTP BW Calculation	220
B.3.3 Voice RTCP BW Calculation.....	220
B.3.4 T.38 14,400 Kbps Fax RTP BW Calculation	220
B.3.5 FAX RTCP BW Calculation.....	221
B.3.6 QoS Profiles	221
B.4 1 POTS Basic VoIP G.711 Service Profile	222
B.4.1 Service Characteristics	222
B.4.2 RTP BW Calculation	222
B.4.3 RTCP BW Calculation.....	222
B.4.4 QoS Profile.....	222
B.5 1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.711 Service Profile.....	224
B.5.1 Service Characteristics	224
B.5.2 Voice RTP BW Calculation	224
B.5.3 Voice RTCP BW Calculation.....	224
B.5.4 T.38 14,400 Kbps Fax RTP BW Calculation	224

B.5.5 FAX RTCP BW Calculation.....	225
B.5.6 QoS Profiles	225
Glossary	226

Figures

Figure 1-1: BreezeMAX System Architecture.....	5
Figure 1-2: Two-Channels Micro Base Station Unit	6
Figure 1-3: Four-Channels Micro Base Station Unit.....	6
Figure 2-1: AU-ODU Pole Installation Using Special Clamps	27
Figure 2-2: AU-ODU Pole Installation Using Metal Bands	28
Figure 2-3: AU-ODU-HP Pole Installation Using Special Clamps	29
Figure 2-4: AU-ODU-HP Pole Installation Using Metal Bands	30
Figure 2-5: Bottom Panel of the AU-ODU	31
Figure 2-6: Four-Channels Micro Base Station Front Panel	34
Figure 2-7: ODU Power Feeder Front Panel.....	39
Figure 2-8: ODU Power Feeder Rear Panel	39
Figure 4-1: Uplink and Downlink Scheduled Transmissions	137
Figure 4-2: Filtering Functionality	147
Figure 4-3: QinQ Double-Tagged Frames.....	174
Figure 4-4: QinQ Ethertypes in BreezeMAX	175

Tables

Table 1-1: 3.3 GHz Frequency Bands.....	3
Table 1-2: 3.5 GHz Frequency Bands.....	4
Table 1-3: 3.6 GHz Frequency Bands.....	4
Table 1-4: Radio Specifications.....	13
Table 1-5: Typical Sensitivity (dBm, PER=1%).....	14
Table 1-6: Gross Capacity (Mbps)	14
Table 1-7: Micro Base Station Antennas, Electrical Specifications.....	14
Table 1-8: Data Communication (Ethernet Ports)	15
Table 1-9: Micro Base Station IDU to AU-ODU Communication.....	15
Table 1-10: Configuration and Management.....	16
Table 1-11: Standards Compliance, General	16
Table 1-12: Environmental Specifications	17
Table 1-13: Services	17
Table 1-14: Mechanical Specifications, Micro Base Station Equipment	18
Table 1-15: Electrical Specifications, Micro Base Station Equipment.....	18
Table 1-16: Connectors, Micro Base Station Equipment	19
Table 1-17: Base Station Antennas, Mechanical Specifications	20
Table 2-1: AU-ODU Types	23
Table 2-2: IF Cables Requirements	25
Table 2-3: Maximum IF Cable Length (Double Shielded Cables).....	25
Table 2-4: AU-ODU LEDs	31
Table 2-5: AU-ODU Connectors.....	31
Table 2-6: Micro Base Station Connectors.....	34

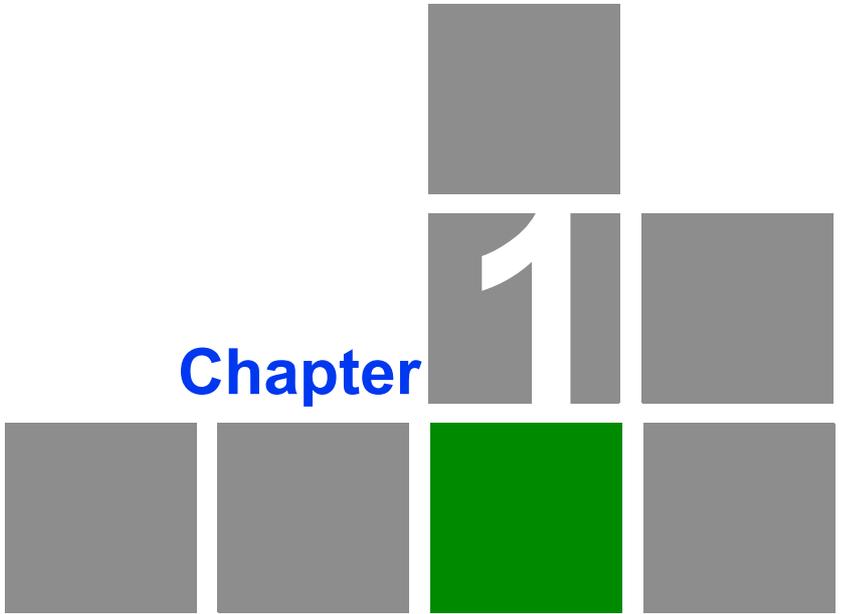
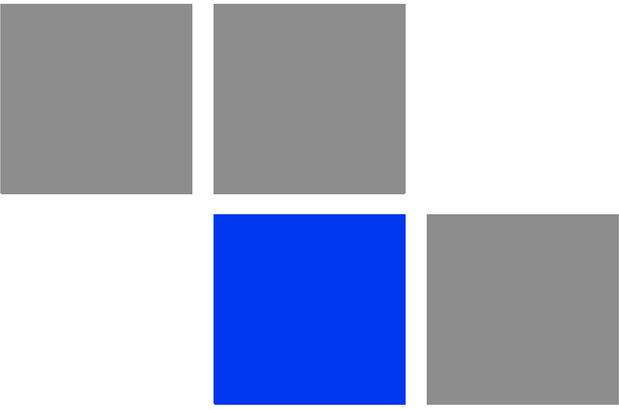
Table 2-7: Micro Base Station LEDs	35
Table 2-8: ODU Power Feeder Connectors	39
Table 2-9: ODU Power Feeder LEDs.....	39
Table 3-1: Basic Micro Base Station Parameters.....	44
Table 3-2: AU-ODU LEDs	47
Table 3-3: Micro Base Station LEDs	47
Table 3-4: ODU Power Feeder LEDs.....	48
Table 4-1: COM Port Configuration.....	54
Table 4-2: Default Passwords	65
Table 4-3: Frequency Bands.....	103
Table 4-4: Rates (Modulation Schemes and Coding)	110
Table 4-5: Per Rate Bytes per Symbol.....	125
Table 4-6: Scanning Intermediate Steps	133
Table 4-7: Hybrid VLAN Mode	145
Table 4-8: Hybrid VLAN Mode	152
Table 4-9: Priority Marking Values	161
Table 4-10: CT Values	168
Table 4-11: Pre-Configured Data Service Profiles	186
Table 4-12: Pre-Configured Forwarding Rules for Data Service.....	187
Table 4-13: Pre-Configured Priority Classifiers for Data Services	187
Table 4-14: Pre-Configured QoS Profiles for Data Services	188
Table 4-15: Pre-Configured Voice Service Profiles (for DRAP-based Gateways)	188
Table 4-16: Pre-Configured Service Profiles for Generic (non-DRAP) VoIP Services.....	189
Table 4-17: Pre-Configured Forwarding Rule for Voice Services	189
Table 4-18: Pre-Configured Priority Classifiers for Generic (non-DRAP) VoIP Service.....	189
Table 4-19: Pre-Configured BE and RT QoS Profile for Voice Services.....	190

Table 4-20: Pre-Configured CG QoS Profile for Generic (non-DRAP) VoIP Services 190

Table 4-21: Pre-Configured Forwarding Rule for Transparent Services 190

Table 4-22: Pre-Configured QoS Profile for Transparent Services 191

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary 192



Chapter

System Description

In This Chapter:

- “Introducing BreezeMAX” on page 3
- “The Micro Base Station” on page 6
- “Networking Equipment” on page 9
- “Management Systems” on page 10
- “Specifications” on page 13

1.1 Introducing BreezeMAX

BreezeMAX 3000 is Alvarion's WiMAX™ platform for the 3 - 4 GHz licensed frequency bands. It leverages Alvarion's market-leading knowledge of Broadband Wireless Access (BWA), industry leadership, proven field experience, and core technologies including many years of experience with OFDM technology.

Built from the ground up based on the IEEE 802.16/ETSI HIPERMAN standards, BreezeMAX 3000 is designed specifically to meet the unique requirements of the wireless Metropolitan Area Network (MAN) environment and to deliver broadband access services to a wide range of customers, including residential, SOHO, SME and multi-tenant customers. Its Media Access Control (MAC) protocol was designed for point-to-multipoint broadband wireless access applications, providing a very efficient use of the wireless spectrum and supporting difficult user environments. The access and bandwidth allocation mechanisms accommodate hundreds of subscriber units per channel, with subscriber units that may support different services to multiple end users.

The system uses OFDM radio technology, which is robust in adverse channel conditions and enables operation in non line of sight links. This allows easy installation and improves coverage, while maintaining a high level of spectral efficiency. Modulation and coding can be adapted per burst, ever striving to achieve a balance between robustness and efficiency in accordance with prevailing link conditions.

BreezeMAX supports a wide range of network services, including Internet access (via IP or PPPoE tunneling), VPNs and Voice over IP. Service recognition and multiple classifiers that can be used for generating various service profiles enable operators to offer differentiated SLAs with committed QoS for each service profile.

BreezeMAX products are currently available in the 3.3 GHz, 3.5 GHz and 3.8 GHz frequency bands, as shown in the following tables. The actual operating frequencies used by the system can be configured according to applicable radio regulations, license conditions and specific deployment considerations.

Table 1-1: 3.3 GHz Frequency Bands

Series (band)	Duplex Separation	Uplink Frequency	Downlink Frequency
3.3e	50 MHz	3366-3385 MHz	3316-3335 MHz
3.3f	50 MHz	3381-3400 MHz	3331-3350 MHz
3.3g	-76 MHz	3300-3324 MHz	3376-3400 MHz

* The 3.3 GHz CPE supports the full range of the 3.3e and 3.3f bands. The 3.3 GHz g CPE supports the 3.3g band. The Base Station's radio (ODU) supports a single band: 3.3e, 3.3f or 3.3g.

Table 1-2: 3.5 GHz Frequency Bands

Series (band)	Duplex Separation	Uplink Frequency	Downlink Frequency
3.5a	-100 MHz	3399.5 to 3453.5 MHz	3499.5 to 3553.5 MHz
3.5b	-100 MHz	3450 to 3500 MHz	3550 to 3600 MHz

* The 3.5 GHz CPE supports the full range. The Base Station's radio (ODU) supports either band 3.5a or band 3.5b.

Table 1-3: 3.6 GHz Frequency Bands

Series (band)	Duplex Separation	Uplink Frequency	Downlink Frequency
3.6a	-100 MHz	3600 to 3653.5 MHz	3700 to 3753.5 MHz
3.6b	-100 MHz	3646.5 to 3700 MHz	3746.5 to 3800 MHz

* The 3.6 GHz CPE supports the full range. The Base Station's radio (ODU) supports either band 3.6a or band 3.6b.

A BreezeMAX system comprises of the following:

- Customer Premise Equipment (CPE): BreezeMAX Subscriber Units and Alvarion's Voice/Networking Gateways.
- Base Station (BST) Equipment: BreezeMAX Base Station equipment, including the modular Base Station and its components and the stand-alone Micro Base Station (μ BST).
- Networking Equipment: Standard switches/routers and other networking equipment, supporting connections to the backbone and/or Internet.
- Management Systems: SNMP-based Management, Billing and Customer Care, and other Operation Support Systems.

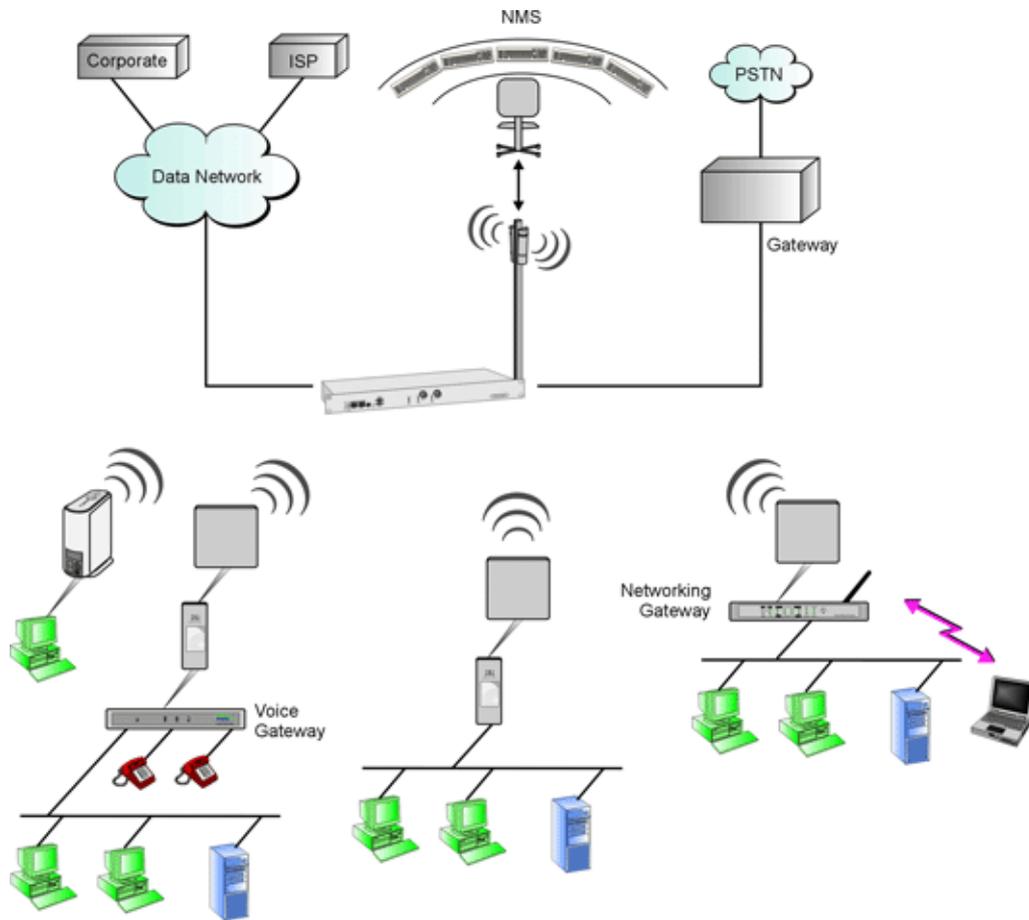


Figure 1-1: BreezeMAX System Architecture

1.2 The Micro Base Station

The Multi Carrier, High Power, Full Duplex Micro Base Station (μ BST) provides all the functionality necessary to communicate with SUs and to connect to the backbone of the Service Provider. The Micro Base Station Unit is designed to provide an alternative to the BreezeMAX Modular Base Station and a low cost solution in places where the number of subscribers is limited, and only one or two sectors are necessary (i.e. communities areas). The use of the same AU-ODU that is used by the modular Base Station provides an easy migration path and protection of the initial investment when the customer base increases and there is a need to replace the Micro Base Station with the full, modular Base Station equipment.

The Micro Base Station equipment comprises an indoor Micro Base Station Unit and an outdoor radio unit (AU-ODU).

1.2.1 Micro Base Station Indoor Unit

The Micro Base Station unit provides the full base station functionality necessary for serving a single sector. The functionality of the Micro Base station is very similar to the combined functionalities of NPU and AU-IDU modules of the modular Base Station.



Figure 1-2: Two-Channels Micro Base Station Unit



Figure 1-3: Four-Channels Micro Base Station Unit

The functionality of the Micro Base Station unit includes:

- Backbone Ethernet connectivity via a 10/100 Base-T network interface
- Traffic classification and connection establishment initiation
- Policy based data switching
- Service Level Agreements management
- Centralized agent for managing the Micro Base Station unit and all registered SUs
- Alarms management, including external alarm inputs and activation of external devices (future option).

An SNMP agent incorporated into the unit enables extensive In-Band (IB) management of the Micro Base Station and all its registered SUs. Out-Of-Band (OOB) management is supported through a dedicated 10/100 Base-T interface. A serial RS-232 port supports local configuration, monitoring and debugging.

The Micro Base Station also contains the wireless IEEE 802.16 MAC and modem. It includes two or four PHY channels that can connect to one or two ODUs (in the current release only channels 1 and 2 of the four-channels unit can be used).

Multiple channel configuration with second order diversity allows coverage of one sector with space and time diversity by two ODUs connected to channels 1 and 2. The same frequency and transmit power are set for both ODUs that share a common MAC and modem.

There are two types of Micro Base Stations:

- **Two-Channels Micro Base Station:** The two channels can support either 1.75 MHz or 3.5 MHz Phy channels. There are two different models: one is powered from the AC mains (110 or 220 VAC), and the other is powered from a -48 VDC power source. The DC model of the Two-Channels Micro Base Station cannot support the high current required by AU-ODU-HP (High Power ODU). The AC model can support a maximum of one AU-ODU-HP.
- **Four-Channels Micro Base Station:** In the current release, only channels 1 and 2 can be used. These two channels can support 1.75, 3.5 or 7 MHz Phy channels. The Four-Channels Micro Base Station is powered from a -48 VDC power source (no AC model) and can support the higher current required for powering two AU-ODU-HP (High Power ODU) units.

1.2.2 AU-ODU

The AU-ODU of the Micro Base Station, identical to the AU-ODU of the modular Base Station, is a full duplex multi-carrier radio unit that connects to an external antenna. It is designed to provide high system gain and interference robustness utilizing high transmit power and low noise figure. It supports a bandwidth of up to 14 MHz, enabling future options such as increased capacity through the use of a multiplexer or larger channels.

The Micro Base Station unit connects to the AU-ODU via an Intermediate Frequency (IF) cable, carrying full duplex data, control and management signals between the Micro Base Station and the AU-ODU, as well as power (48 VDC) and 64 MHz synchronization reference clock from the Micro Base Station IDU to the AU-ODU. The IF Tx and Rx frequencies are 240 MHz and 140 MHz, respectively. IDU ODU service channel at 14 MHz serves for bi-directional control, status and management signaling.



There are two versions of the AU-ODU:

- AU-ODU: Output power of 13 to 28 dBm (18 to 28 dBm in the 3.6 GHz ODUs)
- AU-ODU-HP (High Power ODU): Output power of 24 to 34 dBm. The AU-ODU-HP is currently available in the 3.5 GHz bands (3.5a and 3.5b). When used with the DC model of the Two-Channels Micro Base Station, the AU-ODU-HP(s) should be powered by an ODU Power Feeder. When used with the AC model, only a single AU-ODU-HP can be powered by the Micro Base Station.



NOTE

For convenience, all references in this manual to AU-ODU are applicable also for AU-ODU-HP, unless explicitly stated otherwise.

1.2.3 Power Feeder

The ODU Power Feeder is used to provide power (-48 VDC) to AU-ODU-HP High Power ODUs connected to a DC-powered Two-Channels Micro Base Station. The Power Feeder transfers transparently all signals between the Micro Base Station and the ODU, while injecting DC power



received from an external source. Each ODU Power Feeder unit can serve up to four High Power ODUs. Up to three ODU Power Feeder units can be installed in a 1U high Power Feeder panel.

1.3 Networking Equipment

The Micro Base Station equipment is connected to the backbone through standard data communication and telecommunication equipment. The Micro Base Station connects to the backbone through a 10/100 Base-T port.

The point-to-point link from the Micro Base Station to the backbone can be either wired or wireless.

Alvarion offers the DUET 6004, a V5.2 to SIP Access Gateway connecting a Class 5 switch over V5.2 to its' Voice Gateways.

1.3.1 DUET 6004 Access Gateway

The DUET 6004 is a carrier-grade V5.2 to SIP gateway, connecting a Class 5 switch over V5.2 to Alvarion's SIP stand alone Voice Gateways (VG-1D1V and VF-1D2V) or Voice Gateway IDUs (IDU-1D1V and IDU-1D2V).

A Local Exchange (LE) with the DUET 6004 support basic and advanced telephony services as CLASS services, IN services and others. The DUET can be either collocated with the BreezeMAX Base Station or installed at the LE premises concentrating the traffic of many Base Stations.

The LE switch provides the call processing, billing and administrative functions, while the DUET provides the signaling translation and media conversion:

- **Signaling Translation:** converting the V5.2 signaling into SIP commands and vice versa.
- **Media Conversion:** converting media formats such as PCM to G.729A and others. It also provides additional media related services such as Echo Canceling and others.
- **Outbound SIP Proxy:** The DUET operates as outbound SIP proxy for the Voice Gateways. All outbound calls from the user agents are sent to the DUET. Note that the DUET does not support SIP-to-SIP calls and all calls are always passed to the switch via the V5.2 interface.
- **Registration:** Processing registration requests of the SIP Voice Gateways connected to the BreezeMAX CPE.

The DUET complies with the V5.2 interface standard second edition and the SIP RFC 3261, "SIP: Session Initiation Protocol", making it a certified means to provide telephony and advanced services over an IP network. It supports voice band data transmission of FAX G.3 (over G.711 or T.38), payphone signaling (Tax and reverse polarity), CLI, as well as other services that are hook flash based (call waiting, hold, call forward, etc.).

1.4 Management Systems

The end-to-end IP-based architecture of the system enables full management of all components, using standard management tools. An SNMP agent in the NPU/Micro Base Station implements standard and proprietary MIBs for remote setting of operational modes and parameters of the Base Station equipment as well as the Subscriber Units served by it. Security features incorporated in BreezeMAXunits restrict the access for management purposes.

In addition, the Ethernet WAN can be used to connect to other Operation Support Systems including servers, Customer Care systems and AAA (Authentication, Authorization and Admission) tools.

1.4.1 AlvariSTAR

AlvariSTAR is a comprehensive Carrier-Class network management system for Alvarion's Broadband Wireless Access products-based Networks. AlvariSTAR is designed for today's most advanced Service Providers' Network Operation Centers (NOCs), providing the network Operation, Administration and Maintenance (OA&M) staff and managers with all the network surveillance, monitoring and configuration capabilities that they require in order to effectively manage the BWA network while keeping the resources and expenses at a minimum.

AlvariSTAR is designed to offer the network's OA&M staff with a unified, scalable and distributable network management system. AlvariSTAR system uses a distributed client-server architecture, which provides the service provider with a robust, scalable and fully redundant network management system in which all single points of failure can be avoided.

AlvariSTAR provides the following BWA network management functionality:

- Device Discovery
- Device Inventory
- Topology

- Fault Management
- Configuration Management
- Service Management
- Data Collection
- Performance Monitoring
- Device embedded software upgrade
- Security Management
- Northbound interface to other Network Management Systems.

Embedded with the entire knowledge base of BWA network operations, AlvariSTAR is a unique state-of-the-art power multiplier in the hands of the service provider that enables the provisioning of satisfied customers. AlvariSTAR dramatically extends the abilities of the service provider to provide a rich portfolio of services and to support rapid customer base expansion.

1.4.2 AlvariCRAFT

Alvarion's AlvariCRAFT is an SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) application designed for on-line management of BreezeMAX system components. This utility simplifies the installation and maintenance of small size installations by easily enabling the change of settings or firmware upgrade for one Base Station at a time, including the managed device's components and associated SUs.

AlvariCRAFT allows accessing a wide array of monitoring and configuration options, including:

- Device Manager for the selected Micro Base Station and SUs
- Selected unit configuration modification
- Service Profiles verification and modification
- Service Provisioning
- Firmware upgrade for the Micro Base Station and SUs

- On-line performance data monitoring
- Export of configuration details to a CSV file
- Support for Telnet cut-through to the Base Station and http cut-through to Gateways behind connected SUs

1.5 Specifications

1.5.1 Radio

Table 1-4: Radio Specifications

Item	Description		
Frequency	Unit/Band	Uplink (MHz)	Downlink (MHz)
	AU-ODU-3.3e	3366-3385	3316-3335
	AU-ODU-3.3f	3381-3400	3331-3350
	AU-ODU-3.3g	3300-3324	3376-3400
	AU-ODU-3.5a	3399.5-3453.5	3499.5-3553.5
	AU-ODU-3.5b	3450-3500	3550-3600
	AU-ODU-3.6a	3600-3653.5	3700-3753.5
	AU-ODU-3.6b	3646.5-3700	3746.5-3800
Operation Mode	FDD, Full duplex		
Channel Bandwidth	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1.75 MHz ■ 3.5 MHz ■ 7 MHz (4-channels units only) 		
Central Frequency Resolution	0.125 MHz		
Antenna Port (AU-ODU)	N-Type, 50 Ohm		
Max. Input Power (at AU-ODU antenna port)	-50 dBm before saturation, -17 dBm before damage		
Output Power (at AU-ODU antenna port)	AU-ODU: 13 to 28 dBm +/-1 dBm (excluding 3.6 GHz ODUs) 3.6 GHz AU-ODU: 18 to 28 dBm +/-1 dBm AU-ODU-HP: 24 to 34 dBm +/-1 dBm		
Modulation	OFDM modulation, 256 FFT points; BPSK, QPSK, QAM16, QAM64		
FEC	Convolutional Coding: 1/2, 2/3, 3/4		

1.5.2 Sensitivity

Table 1-5: Typical Sensitivity (dBm, PER=1%)

Modulation & Coding	1.75 MHz Bandwidth	3.5 MHz Bandwidth	7 MHz Bandwidth
BPSK 1/2	-103	-100	-97
BPSK 3/4	-101	-98	-95
QPSK 1/2	-100	-97	-94
QPSK 3/4	-97	-94	-91
QAM16 1/2	-94	-91	-88
QAM16 3/4	-91	-88	-85
QAM64 2/3	-86	-83	-80
QAM64 3/4	-85	-82	-79

1.5.3 Gross Capacity

Table 1-6: Gross Capacity (Mbps)

Modulation & Coding	1.75 MHz Bandwidth	3.5 MHz Bandwidth	7 MHz Bandwidth
BPSK 1/2	0.71	1.41	2.4
BPSK 3/4	1.06	2.12	3.6
QPSK 1/2	1.41	2.82	4.8
QPSK 3/4	2.12	4.23	7.2
QAM16 1/2	2.82	5.64	9.6
QAM16 3/4	4.24	8.47	14.4
QAM64 2/3	5.65	11.29	19.2
QAM64 3/4	6.35	12.71	21.6

1.5.4 Micro Base Station Antennas (optional)

Table 1-7: Micro Base Station Antennas, Electrical Specifications

Item	Description
BS ANT 60V/3.3-3.8	16.5 dBi minimum in the 3.3-3.8 GHz band, 60° AZ x 7° EL, vertical polarization, compliant with ETSI EN 302 326-3 V1.2.1 (2007-01)
BS ANT 90V/3.3-3.8	14.5 dBi minimum in the 3.3-3.8 GHz band, 90° AZ x 7° EL, vertical polarization, compliant with ETSI EN 302 326-3 V1.2.1 (2007-01)

Table 1-7: Micro Base Station Antennas, Electrical Specifications

Item	Description
BS ANT 90V/3.3-3.7	15 dBi typical in the 3.3-3.8 GHz band, 90° AZ x 7° EL, vertical polarization, compliant with ETSI EN 302 326-3 V1.2.1 (2007-01)
BS ANT 120/3.5V	13 dBi typical in the 3.3-3.8 GHz band, 120° AZ x 7° EL, vertical polarization, compliant with ETSI EN 302 326-3 V1.2.1 (2007-01)
BS ANT 60/3.5H	16 dBi typical in the 3.4-3.7 GHz band, 60° AZ x 9° EL, horizontal polarization, compliant with ETSI EN 302 326-3 V1.2.1 (2007-01)
BS ANT 90/3.5H	14 dBi typical in the 3.4-3.7 GHz band, 90° AZ x 8° EL, horizontal polarization, compliant with ETSI EN 302 326-3 V1.2.1 (2007-01)
Omni ANT 3.4-3.6	10 dBi typical in the 3.4-3.6 GHz band, 360° AZ x 9° EL, vertical polarization
Omni ANT 3.3-3.5	10 dBi typical in the 3.3-3.5 GHz band, 360° AZ x 9° EL, vertical polarization

1.5.5 Data Communication (Ethernet Ports)

Table 1-8: Data Communication (Ethernet Ports)

Item	Description	
Standard Compliance	IEEE 802.3 CSMA/CD	
Maximum Packet Size	1550 Bytes (including 4 CRC bytes and 4 VLAN tag bytes)	
	Data Port	10/100 Mbps, Full Duplex
	Management Port	10/100 Mbps, Half/Full Duplex with Auto Negotiation

1.5.6 Micro Base Station IDU to AU-ODU Communication

Table 1-9: Micro Base Station IDU to AU-ODU Communication

Item	Description
IF Frequency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Tx: 240 MHz ■ Rx: 140 MHz
Ref Synchronization Frequency	64 MHz
Bi-Directional Control Frequency	14 MHz
IF cable Impedance	50 Ohm

Table 1-9: Micro Base Station IDU to AU-ODU Communication

Item	Description
Maximum IF cable Attenuation	AU-ODU: 19 dB @ 240 MHz, 15 dB @ 140 MHz, 8 dB @ 64 MHz AU-ODU-HP: 10 dB @ 240 MHz, 7.5 dB @ 140 MHz, 8 dB @ 64 MHz
Minimum IF cable Shielding Effectiveness	90 dB in the 10-300 MHz band
Maximum IF cable Return Loss	20 dB in the 10-300 MHz band
Maximum IF cable DC Resistance	AU-ODU: 4.0 Ohm AU-ODU-HP: 1.5 Ohm

1.5.7 Configuration and Management

Table 1-10: Configuration and Management

Item	Description
Out Of Band (OOB) Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Telnet via Management port ■ SNMP via Management port ■ Monitor port
In Band (IB) Management via Data Port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ SNMP ■ Telnet
SNMP Agents	SNMP ver 1 client MIB II (RFC 1213), Private BreezeMAX MIBs
Authentication	X509v3 digital certificate
Software upgrade	Using TFTP
Configuration upload/download	Using TFTP

1.5.8 Standards Compliance, General

Table 1-11: Standards Compliance, General

Type	Standard
EMC	ETSI EN 301 489-1
Safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ EN 60950-1 ■ UL 60 950-1

Table 1-11: Standards Compliance, General

Type	Standard
Environmental	ETS 300 019: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Part 2-1 T 1.2 & part 2-2 T 2.3 for indoor & outdoor ■ Part 2-3 T 3.2 for indoor ■ Part 2-4 T 4.1E for outdoor
Radio	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ETSI EN 301 753 V.1.1.1 ■ ETSI EN 301 021 V.1.6.1

1.5.9 Environmental

Table 1-12: Environmental Specifications

Type	Unit	Details
Operating temperature	Outdoor units	-40°C to 55°C
	Indoor equipment	0°C to 40°C
Operating humidity	Outdoor units	5%-95% non condensing, Weather protected
	Indoor equipment	5%-95% non condensing

1.5.10 Services

Table 1-13: Services

Item	Description
Max number of Services per μ BST	1,023 (One or several services may be defined per subscriber, one or more subscribers can be supported per SU)
Max number of Service Profiles per μ BST	1,024
Max number of Forwarding Rules per μ BST	255
Max number of Priority Classifiers per μ BST	255
Max number of QoS Profiles per μ BST	255
Max number of Subscribers per μ BST	1,024 (applicable only for permanent SUs)
Min number of data connections per Service	2 (1 uplink, 1 downlink)
Max number of data connections per Service	8 (4 uplink, 4 downlink)
Max number of data connections per SU	126

Table 1-13: Services

Item	Description
Max number of data connections per μ BST	3072 - 3 x number of SUs (3 connections are reserved for each SU)
Max number of SUs per μ BST	250
Max number of MAC addresses in Bridging Table	μ BST: 1,000 SU: 512 (Aging time is configurable. The default is 3 minutes for SU, 10 minutes for μ BST)
Max number of VLANs per Service	16
Max number of VLANs per SU	16
Max number of VLANs (VPL IDs) per μ BST	1,024
Max number of concurrent voice calls per Voice/L2 Service	50
Max number of concurrent voice calls per μ BST	50

1.5.11 Physical and Electrical

1.5.11.1 Mechanical

Table 1-14: Mechanical Specifications, Micro Base Station Equipment

Unit	Dimensions (cm)	Weight (kg)
Micro Base Station IDU	1U ETSI type shelf, 1U x 44.4 x 27.2	3
AU-ODU	31.5 x 8.8 x 15.7	2.9
AU-ODU-HP	31.5 x 16 x 16	5.5
Power Feeder panel	1U ETSI type panel	0.14
Power Feeder Module	15.7 x 14.6 x 3.17	0.6

* 1U=44.45 mm (1.75")

1.5.11.2 Electrical

Table 1-15: Electrical Specifications, Micro Base Station Equipment

Unit	Details
Power Source	AC model (Two-Channels): 85 - 265 VAC, 47 - 63 Hz DC model (Two/Four-Channels): -40.5 to -60 VDC

Table 1-15: Electrical Specifications, Micro Base Station Equipment

Unit	Details
Power Consumption (excluding ODUs) - 2-Channels unit	87W maximum
Power Consumption (excluding ODUs) - 4-Channels unit	64W maximum
AU-ODU	38W maximum, 33W typical
AU-ODU-HP	95W maximum, 70W typical
ODU Power Feeder	Power Source: -40.5 to -60 VDC Power Dissipation: 2W per channel

1.5.11.3 Connectors

Table 1-16: Connectors, Micro Base Station Equipment

Connector	Description	
Micro Base Station IDU	AC IN (on rear panel of AC model, Two-Channels Micro Base Station)	3 pin AC power outlet
	DC IN (on rear panel of DC model)	3 pin D-Type male Amphenol P/N 17TWA3W3PR157
	DATA	10/100Base-T (RJ-45) with 2 embedded LEDs. Cable connection to a PC: Crossed Cable connection to a hub: Straight
	MGMT	10/100Base-T (RJ-45) with 2 embedded LEDs. Cable connection to a PC: Crossed Cable connection to a hub: Straight
	ALRM IN	9-pin micro D-Type jack
	ALRM OUT	9-pin micro D-Type jack
	MON	3-pin low profile jack
	ODU 1, ODU 2	2 x TNC jack, lightning protected
	ODU3, ODU4 (Four-Channels Micro Base Station)	2 x TNC jack, lightning protected. Not used in current release.
AU-ODU, AU-ODU-HP	IF	TNC jack, lightning protected
	ANT	N-Type jack, 50 Ohm, lightning protected
ODU Power Feeder	ODU 1 -4	4 x TNC jack, lightning protected
	IDU 1-4	4 x TNC jack, lightning protected

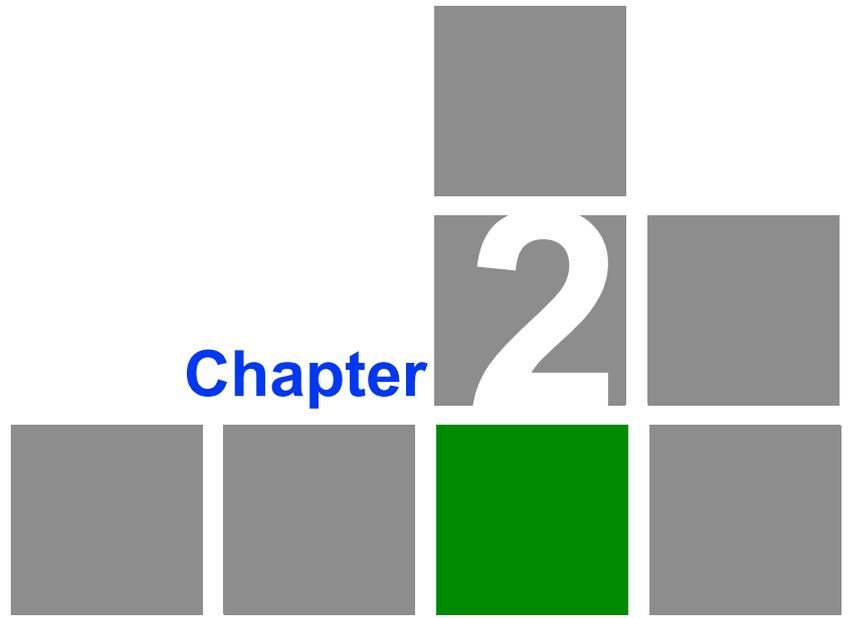
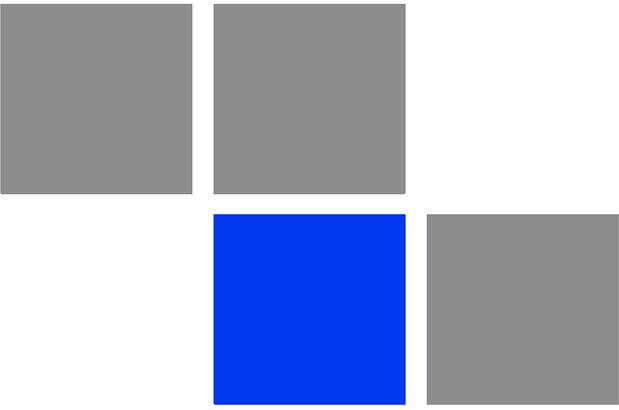
Table 1-16: Connectors, Micro Base Station Equipment

Connector	Description	
	Power	3 pin/20A D-Type male, Amphenol P/N

1.5.11.4 Micro Base Station Antennas, Mechanical Specifications

Table 1-17: Base Station Antennas, Mechanical Specifications

Unit	Description	Dimensions (cm)	Weight (kg)
BS ANT 60V/3.3-3.8	Mounting kit: 2" to 4" pole Connector: N-Type female	76.6 x 15 x 8.7	2.2
BS ANT 90V/3.3-3.8	Mounting kit: 2" to 4" pole Connector: N-Type female	76.6 x 15 x 8.6	2.2
BS ANT 90V/3.3-3.7	Mounting kit: 2" to 4" pole Connector: N-Type female	53.6 x 36 x 3	2.3
BS ANT 120/3.5V	Mounting kit: 2" to 4" pole Connector: N-Type female	76.6 x 14.4 x 8.3	2.0
BS ANT 60/3.5H	Mounting kit: 2" to 4" pole Connector: N-Type female	50 x 20 x 2.8	2
BS ANT 90/3.5H	Mounting kit: 2" to 4" pole Connector: N-Type female	60 x 25 x 5.5	2
Omni ANT 3.4-3.6	Mounting bracket: 30 to 53 mm pole. Connector: N-Type female	67.5 x 8 x 7.8	0.29
Omni ANT 3.3-3.5	Mounting bracket: 30 to 50 mm pole. Connector: N-Type female	67.5 x 8 x 7.8	0.29



Chapter

2

Installation Guidelines

In This Chapter:

- “Installing the AU-ODU” on page 23
- “Installing the Micro Base Station Equipment” on page 33
- “Installing the ODU Power Feeder” on page 38

2.1 Installing the AU-ODU

The following sections describe how to install the AU-ODU, including pole mounting the ODU and connecting the cables.

2.1.1 AU-ODU Installation Requirements

2.1.1.1 AU-ODU Packing List

- ODU: Any of the following:

Table 2-1: AU-ODU Types

Item	Description
AU-ODU-3.3d	AU-ODU operating in the 3.3d band
AU-ODU-3.3e	AU-ODU operating in the 3.3e band
AU-ODU-3.3f	AU-ODU operating in the 3.3f band
AU-ODU-3.3g	AU-ODU operating in the 3.3g band
AU-ODU-3.5a	AU-ODU operating in the 3.5a band
AU-ODU-3.5b	AU-ODU operating in the 3.5b band
AU-ODU-HP-3.5a	High Power AU-ODU operating in the 3.5a band
AU-ODU-HP-3.5b	High Power AU-ODU operating in the 3.5b band
AU-ODU-3.6a	AU-ODU operating in the 3.6a band
AU-ODU-3.6b	AU-ODU operating in the 3.6b band

- Pole mounting kit



NOTE

High Power AU-ODU HP unit(s) can be used only with the DC powered Micro Base Station. ODU Power Feeder(s) are required to supply power to AU-ODU-HP units.

2.1.1.2 Additional Installation Requirements

The following items are also required to install the ODU:

- IF cable with two TNC connectors* (see [Section 2.1.3](#) for details on IF cable types and length).
- Antenna* and RF cable* for connecting the antenna to the AU-ODU.

- Grounding cable with an appropriate termination.
- An “H” kit for installation of up to 4 ODUs and 4 antennas that serve a single sector is optionally available*.
- Installation tools and materials, including appropriate means (e.g. a 1" to 4" pole) for installing the AU-ODU (and antenna).

**NOTE**

Items marked with an asterisk (*) are available from Alvarion.

2.1.2 Guidelines for Positioning the AU-ODU

This section provides key guidelines for selecting the optimal installation locations for the AU-ODU and its antenna.

**CAUTION**

ONLY experienced installation professionals who are familiar with local building and safety codes and, wherever applicable, are licensed by the appropriate government regulatory authorities should install outdoor units and antennas.

Failure to do so may void the BreezeMAX product warranty and may expose the end user or Service Provider to legal and financial liabilities. Alvarion and its resellers or distributors are not liable for injury, damage or regulation violations associated with the installation of Outdoor Units or antennas.

Select the optimal locations for the equipment using the following guidelines:

- The ODU can be either pole or wall mounted. Its location should enable easy access to the unit for installation and testing.
- The higher the placement of the antenna, the better the achievable link quality.
- The antenna should be installed so as to provide coverage to all Subscriber Units within its service area.

**NOTE**

The recommended minimum distance between any two antennas in neighboring sectors is 0.5 meters.

The minimum distance between any two antenna in the same sector (space diversity configuration) is 10λ , where $\lambda=C/\text{Frequency (Hz)}$. C is the speed of light in centimeters per second which is equal to 29,979,245,800.

An "H" kit for installation of up to 4 ODUs and 4 antennas that serve a single sector is optionally available from Alvarion. Refer to the detailed BreezeMAX FDD Base Station Installation & Maintenance Manual for information on installing the "H" accessory. The "H" accessory is designed for separation distances of up to 1.3 meters between antennas.

- The ODU should be installed as close as possible to the antenna.

2.1.3 IF Cables

The AU-ODU is connected to the Micro Base Station (or to the ODU Power Feeder) via an IF cable carrying both signals and power. The maximum permitted attenuation of the IF cable at applicable frequencies, its screening effectiveness and its maximum permitted DC resistance (the sum of the DC resistance of the inner and outer conductors) are provided in [Table 2-2](#).

Table 2-2: IF Cables Requirements

Item	Description
Screening Effectiveness	90 dB minimum in the 10-300 MHz band.
IF cable Impedance	50 Ohm
Maximum IF cable Attenuation	AU-ODU: 19 dB @ 240 MHz, 15 dB @ 140 MHz, 8 dB @ 64 MHz AU-ODU-HP: 10 dB @ 240 MHz, 7.5 dB @ 140 MHz, 8 dB @ 64 MHz
Maximum IF cable DC Resistance	AU-ODU: 4.0 Ohm AU-ODU-HP: 1.5 Ohm
Maximum IF cable Return Loss	20 dB in the 10-300 MHz band

Use only double shielded cables. Avoid using a single shielded cable even if it complies with these requirements. [Table 2-3](#) provides details on maximum length for some popular double shielded cables.

Table 2-3: Maximum IF Cable Length (Double Shielded Cables)

Cable	Maximum Length for AU-ODU (meter)	Maximum Length for AU-ODU-HP (meter)
LMR-195	80	30
LMR-240	150	60

Table 2-3: Maximum IF Cable Length (Double Shielded Cables)

Cable	Maximum Length for AU-ODU (meter)	Maximum Length for AU-ODU-HP (meter)
LMR-400	250	150
LMR-600	300	250

2.1.4 Pole Mounting the ODU

The ODU can be mounted on a 1" to 4" pole using one of the following options:

- Special clamps and threaded rods are supplied with each unit. There are two pairs of threaded holes on the back of the unit, enabling to use the clamps for mounting the unit on diverse pole diameters.
- The protrusions with grooves on the top backsides of the unit, and the protrusion on the bottom backside, enable the use of 9/16" wide metal bands (not included with the package) to secure the unit to a pole.



NOTE

Install the unit with the bottom panel, which includes the LEDs, facing downward.

2.1.4.1 Pole Mounting the Regular AU-ODU Using Clamps

Figure 2-1 illustrates the method of mounting a regular AU-ODU on a pole, using the clamps and threaded rods.

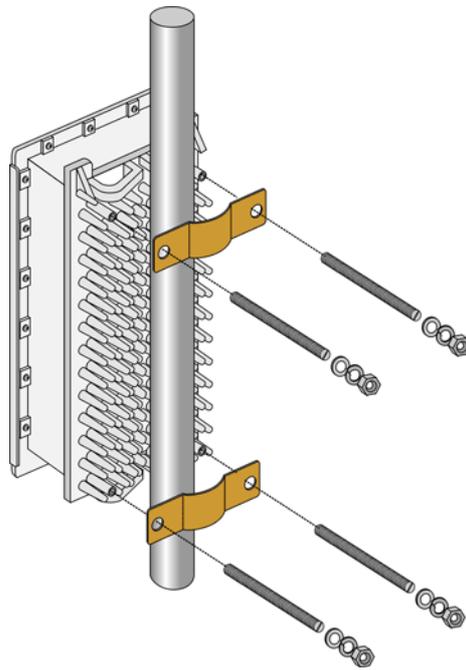


Figure 2-1: AU-ODU Pole Installation Using Special Clamps



NOTE

There is a groove on one end of the threaded rod. Insert the threaded rods with the grooves pointing outward, as these grooves enable you to use a screwdriver to fasten the rods to the unit.

2.1.4.2 Pole Mounting the Regular AU-ODU Using Metal Bands

Figure 2-2 illustrates the method of mounting a regular AU-ODU on a pole, using metal bands.

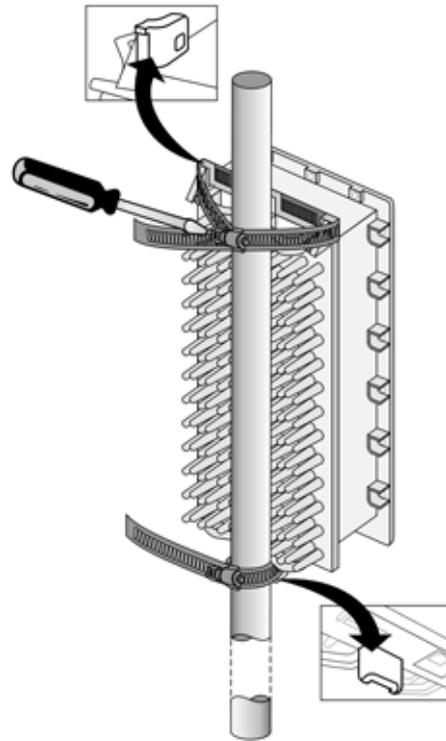


Figure 2-2: AU-ODU Pole Installation Using Metal Bands

2.1.4.3 Pole Mounting the AU-ODU-HP Using Clamps

Figure 2-3 illustrates the method of mounting a High Power AU-ODU-HP on a pole, using the clamps and threaded rods.

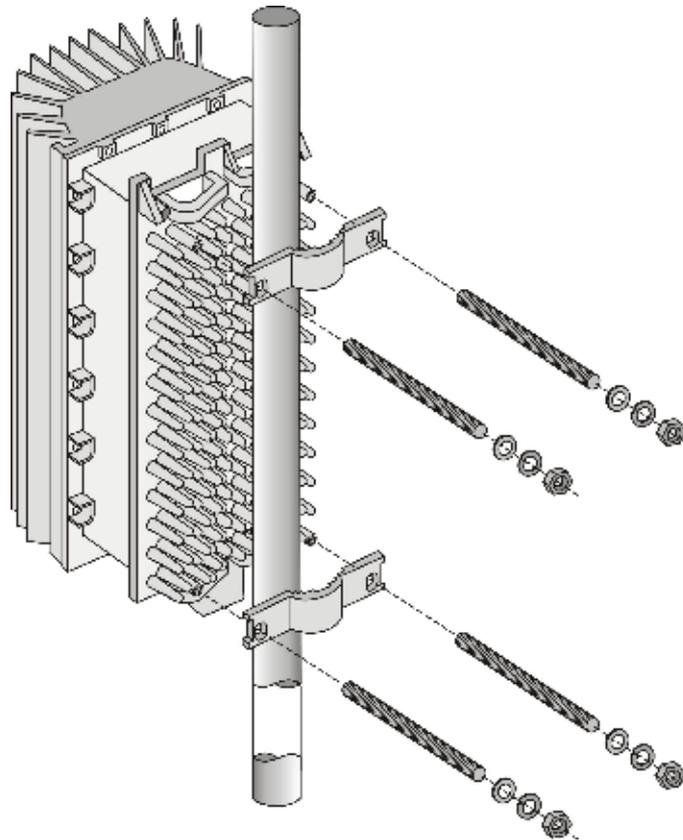


Figure 2-3: AU-ODU-HP Pole Installation Using Special Clamps



NOTE

There is a groove on one end of the threaded rod. Insert the threaded rods with the grooves pointing outward, as these grooves enable you to use a screwdriver to fasten the rods to the unit.

2.1.4.4 Pole Mounting the AU-ODU-HP Using Metal Bands

Figure 2-4 illustrates the method of mounting a High Power AU-ODU-HP on a pole, using metal bands.

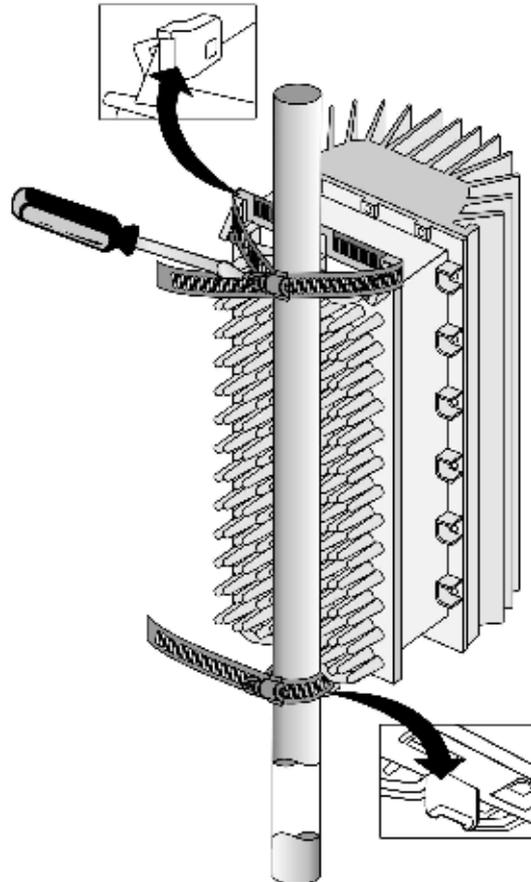


Figure 2-4: AU-ODU-HP Pole Installation Using Metal Bands

2.1.5 AU-ODU

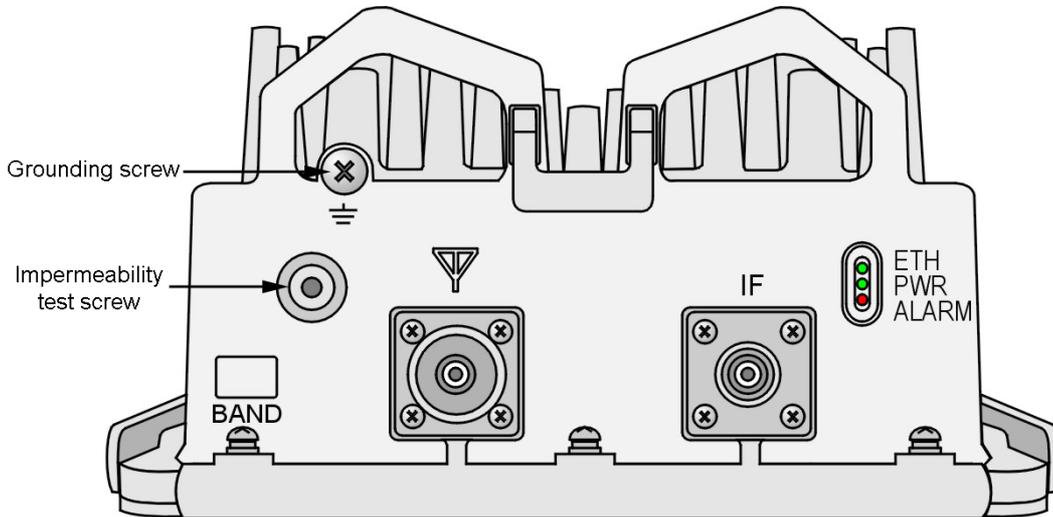


Figure 2-5: Bottom Panel of the AU-ODU



CAUTION

Do not open the impermeability test screw - you may impair the sealing of the unit against moisture and humidity.

Table 2-4: AU-ODU LEDs

Name	Description	Functionality
PWR	Power indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - ODU is not powered ■ Green - ODU power OK
ALARM	Not Used	(Red - blinks shortly during ODU power up)
ETH (WLNK)	Wireless link status indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - No SU is associated ■ Green - At least one SU is associated

Table 2-5: AU-ODU Connectors

Name	Connector	Functionality
IF	TNC jack	Connection to the AU-IDU/Micro Base Station/ODU Power Feeder
Y ANT	N-Type jack, 50 Ohm	Connection to an external antenna
⏏ (GND)	Grounding screw	Connection to ground (earth)

2.1.6 Connecting the Cables

2.1.6.1 Connecting the Grounding Cable

The Grounding screw (marked \perp) is located on the bottom panel of the outdoor unit.



To connect the grounding cable:

- 1 Connect one end of a grounding cable to the grounding screw and tighten the grounding screw firmly.
- 2 Connect the other end of the grounding cable to a good ground (earth) connection.

2.1.6.2 Connecting the Antenna Cable



To connect the RF cable:

- 1 Connect one end of the coaxial RF cable to the RF connector (marked Υ) located on the bottom panel of the unit.
- 2 Connect the other end of the RF cable to the antenna.
- 3 The RF connectors should be properly sealed to protect against rain and moisture.

2.1.6.3 Connecting the IF Cable



To connect the IF cable:

- 1 Connect one end of the coaxial IF cable to the IF connector on the bottom panel of the unit.
- 2 Verify that the length of the IF cable is sufficient to reach the Micro Base Station/Power Feeder. See IF cable length limitation in [Section 2.1.3](#).
- 3 The IF cable connector should be properly sealed to protect against rain and moisture.
- 4 Route the cable to the location selected for the indoor equipment.

2.2 Installing the Micro Base Station Equipment

2.2.1 Installation Requirements

2.2.1.1 Packing List

- Micro Base Station Unit
- Mains power cable or a DC power cable
- Monitor cable

2.2.1.2 Additional Installation Requirements

- Ethernet cable (straight) for connecting the unit to a hub/switch.
- A grounding cable with appropriate terminations for connecting the unit's ground terminal to the rack or to a ground connection.
- For the AC-powered Two-Channels Micro Base Station: Mains plug adapter or termination plug (if the power plug on the supplied AC power cord does not fit local power outlets).
- For installation in a 21" ETSI rack: two 21" ETSI rack adapters
- A portable PC for configuring parameters using the Monitor cable.
- Other installation tools and materials

2.2.2 The Micro Base Station Front Panel

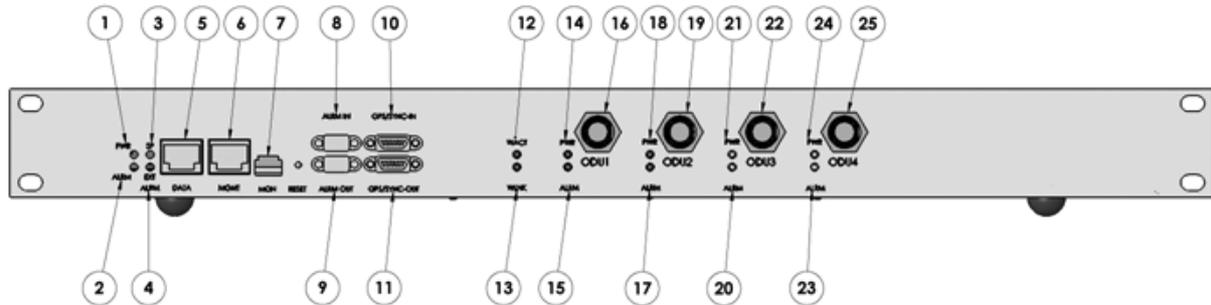


Figure 2-6: Four-Channels Micro Base Station Front Panel

Table 2-6: Micro Base Station Connectors

Name	Connector	Functionality
DATA (5)	10/100Base-T (RJ-45) with 2 embedded LEDs.	Connection to the backbone. Cable connection to a hub/switch/router: Straight
MGMT (6)	10/100Base-T (RJ-45) with 2 embedded LEDs.	Connection to OOB management. Cable connection to a PC: Crossed Cable connection to a hub/switch/router: Straight
MON (7)	3-pin low profile jack	Access for debugging and configuration using the Monitor program
ALRM IN (8)	9-pin micro D-Type jack	Not used currently. Connections to external alarm indicators (3 alarm inputs, NC or NO)
ALRM OUT (9)	9-pin micro D-Type jack	Not used currently. Connections for activation of external devices (4 dry contact pairs)
GPS/SYNC IN (10)	15-pin micro D-Type jack	Not used
GPS/SYNC OUT (11)	15-pin micro D-Type jack	Not used
ODU 1 (16), ODU 2 (19), ODU 3 (22), ODU 4 (25) (in Two-Channels units only ODU 1 and ODU 2 are available)	4 x TNC jacks (2 in Two-Channels units)	IF connections to AU-ODUs. ODU 3 and ODU 4 in Four-Channel units are not used in current release)

Table 2-7: Micro Base Station LEDs

Name	Description	Functionality
PWR (1)	Power indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - Micro Base Station is not powered ■ Red - Input power failure ■ Green - Micro Base Station power is OK
ALRM (2)	Micro Base Station alarm indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - No Micro Base Station alarm ■ Red - Micro Base Station failure
SP (3)	Spare	Not Used
EXT ALRM (4)	External alarm indication	Red - External alarm (received via the ALRM IN port). Not applicable to the current release
WACT (12)	IDU transmission indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - No IDU transmission ■ Green - IDU transmission OK
WLINK (13)	Wireless link status indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - No SU is associated ■ Green - At least one SU is associated
ODU 1 PWR (14), ODU 2 PWR (16), ODU 3 PWR (21), ODU 4 PWR (24) (in Two-Channels units only ODU 1 and ODU 2 are available)	IDU to ODU Power Indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - No IDU to ODU power output ■ Red - IDU to ODU power output failed ■ Green - IDU to ODU power output OK
ODU 1 ALRM (15), ODU 2 ALRM (17), ODU 3 ALRM (20), ODU 4 ALRM (23) (in Two-Channels units only ODU 1 and ODU 2 are available)	IDU-ODU communication status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - IDU-ODU communication OK ■ Red - IDU-ODU communication failure

2.2.2.1 Preparing a Power Cable (DC model)

A 2.5m DC power cable is supplied with each chassis. Additional DC cables can be ordered from Alvarion. If necessary, use the following instruction to prepare a DC cable.

**To prepare the power cable:**

- 1 Use a cable capable of supporting a current of at least 10A. Use a cable with 2 x 10AWG (or thicker) wires for the power plus an additional 10AWG to 20AWG ground wire.
- 2 The matching power connector to be used is Amphenol D-type power P/N 177TWA/3W3/SP3Y with high power socket contacts P/N 17DM53744-1.
- 3 Connect the cable to the power connector as follows:
 - » Pin 1 (RTN): Red (10 AWG min wire)
 - » Pin 2 (-48V): Black (10 AWG min wire)
 - » Pin 3 (): Ground (shield) (10AWG-20AWG wire)
- 4 Attach suitable terminal rings to the side that connects to the power source.

2.2.3 Installing the Micro Base Station Unit

The indoor equipment should be installed as close as possible to the location where the IF cable(s) enters the building. The location of the indoor equipment should take into account its connection to the power source and to the base station networking equipment.

**To install the Micro Base Station:**

- 1 Place the unit on a shelf/desk or install it in a 19" cabinet. For installation in a 21" cabinet, attach suitable ETSI rack adapters to the chassis.
- 2 Connect one end of a grounding cable to the grounding screw located on the rear panel of the unit (marked ) and firmly tighten the grounding screw. Connect the opposite end of the grounding cable to a ground (earth) connection or to the cabinet, if applicable.
- 3 Connect the DATA port to the backbone data equipment (use a straight Ethernet cable to connect to a hub/switch/router). The maximum length of the Ethernet cable is 100m.
- 4 If the MGMT port will be used for remote management, connect it to the appropriate data equipment (use a straight Ethernet cable to connect to a hub/switch/router). The maximum length of the Ethernet cable is 100m.

- 5 For an AC model: Connect the power cord to the unit's AC socket, located on the rear panel. Connect the other end of the power cord to the AC mains. The unit can operate with AC mains of 100-240 VAC, 50-60 Hz.

**NOTE**

The color codes of the power cable are as follows:

Brown	Phase	~
Blue	Neutral	0
Yellow/Green	Ground	⏏

- 6 For a DC model: Connect the power cord to the unit's DC socket, located on the rear panel. Connect the other end of the power cord to the -48 VDC power source.
- 7 For regular AU-ODU(s) connected to any type of Micro Base Station, and for high-power AU-ODU-HP(s) connected to a Four-Channels Micro Base Station: If a single AU-ODU is used, connect the IF cable (already connected at the other end to the AU ODU) to the ODU 1 connector. If two AU-ODUs are used, connect the IF cables to ODU 1 and ODU 2 connectors. To avoid transmissions at undesired frequencies, verify that the frequency and bandwidth parameters are properly configured before connecting the IF cables.

High Power AU-ODU-HP units should be connected via a Power Feeder when used with a DC model of the Two-Channels Micro Base Station: See [Section 2.3.3](#). In the AC model, only a single AU-ODU-HP can be powered by the Micro Base Station.

2.3 Installing the ODU Power Feeder

2.3.1 Installation Requirements

2.3.1.1 Available Products

- A 19" panel (can hold up to three ODU Power Feeder modules).
- ODU Power Feeder module, including a DC power cable, four 0.5 meter IF cables and four screws.

2.3.1.2 Additional Installation Requirements

- A grounding cable with appropriate terminations for connecting the unit's ground terminal to the rack or to a ground connection.
- For installation in a 21" ETSI rack: two 21" ETSI rack adapters
- Other installation tools and materials

2.3.2 The ODU Power Feeder

The ODU Power Feeder is used to provide power (-48 VDC) to AU-ODU-HP High Power ODUs connected to a DC-powered Two-Channels Micro Base Stations. It transfers transparently all signals between the AU-IDU and the ODU, while injecting DC power received from an external source. Each ODU Power Feeder unit can serve up to four High Power ODUs. Up to three ODU Power Feeder units can be installed in a 1U high Power Feeder panel.



NOTE

ODU Power Feeder can be used only with the DC powered Micro Base Station.

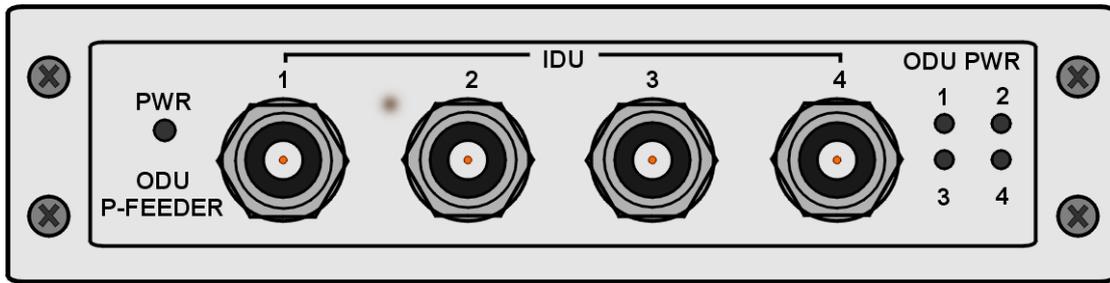


Figure 2-7: ODU Power Feeder Front Panel

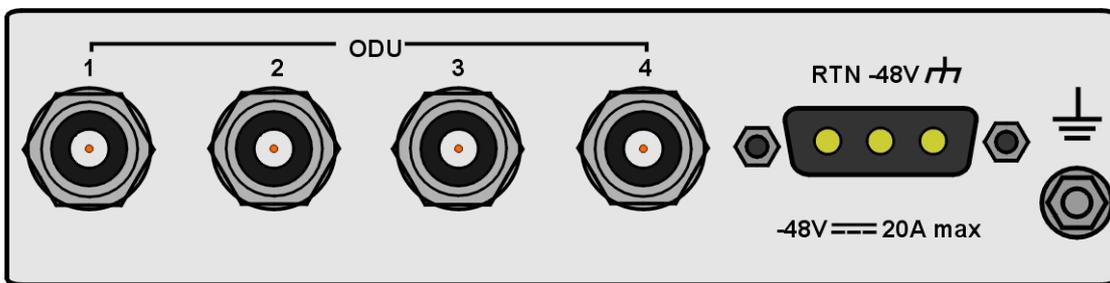


Figure 2-8: ODU Power Feeder Rear Panel

Table 2-8: ODU Power Feeder Connectors

Name	Connector	Functionality
IDU 1 - 4	4 x TNC jacks	Connection to ODU connectors of AU-IDUs/Micro Base Station
ODU 1 - 4	4 x TNC jacks	Connections to IF connectors of AU-ODU-HP units
-48V	3-pin D-Type power jack	Connection to DC power source
⏏ (GND)	Grounding screw	Connection to ground (earth)

Table 2-9: ODU Power Feeder LEDs

Name	Description	Functionality
PWR	Input power indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - ODU Power Feeder is not powered ■ Green - ODU Power Feeder power is OK
ODU PWR 1 - 4	Output power indications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - AU-ODU-HP is not connected ■ Red - Power output problem (short or overload) ■ Green - AU-ODU-HP is connected and powered

2.3.2.1 Preparing a Power Cable

A 2.5m DC power cable is supplied with each ODU Power Feeder module. Additional DC cables can be ordered from Alvarion. If necessary, use the following instruction to prepare a DC cable.



To prepare the power cable:

- 1 Use a cable capable of supporting a current of at least 10A. Use a cable with 2 x 10AWG (or thicker) wires for the power plus an additional 10AWG to 20AWG ground wire.
- 2 The matching power connector to be used is Amphenol D-type power P/N 177TWA/3W3/SP3Y with high power socket contacts P/N 17DM53744-1.
- 3 Connect the cable to the power connector as follows:
 - » Pin 1 (RTN): Red (10 AWG min wire)
 - » Pin 2 (-48V): Black (10 AWG min wire)
 - » Pin 3 (): Ground (shield) (10AWG-20AWG wire)
- 4 Attach suitable terminal rings to the side that connects to the power source.

2.3.3 Installing the ODU Power Feeder

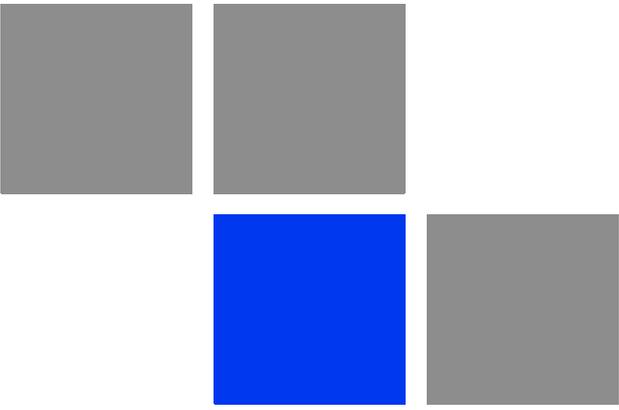
The ODU Power Feeder should be installed as close as possible to the location where the IF cable(s) enters the building. The location of the ODU Power Feeder should take into account its connection to the power source and to the Base Station equipment.



To install the ODU Power Feeder:

- 1 The panel is supplied with blank covers. Release the nuts on the rear side of the panels to remove the blank cover(s) you want to replace with ODU Power Feeder module(s). Attach the ODU Power Feeder module(s) to the panel using the four screws supplied with each module.
- 2 Place the panel with the ODU Power Feeder module(s) on a shelf/desk or install it in a 19" cabinet, next to the Base Station equipment. For installation in a 21" cabinet, attach suitable ETSI rack adapters to the chassis.

- 3** Connect one end of a grounding cable to the grounding screw located on the rear panel of each ODU Power Feeder module and firmly tighten the grounding screw. Connect the opposite end of the grounding cable(s) to a ground (earth) connection or to the cabinet, if applicable.
- 4** Connect the IDU connector(s) to the appropriate ODU connectors of the Micro Base Station using the short (0.5 meter) IF cables supplied with the module.
- 5** Connect the power cord to the ODU Power Feeder's DC socket, located on the rear panel. Connect the other end of the power cord to the -48 VDC power source.
- 6** Connect the IF cable(s), that should already be connected at the other end to the AU ODU-HP(s), to the appropriate ODU connector(s). To avoid transmissions at undesired frequencies, verify that the frequency and bandwidth parameters are properly configured before connecting the IF cables.



In This Chapter:

- [“Configuring Basic Parameters of Micro Base Station” on page 44](#)
- [“Operation Verification” on page 47](#)

3.1 Configuring Basic Parameters of Micro Base Station

After completing the installation process, as described in the preceding chapter, some basic parameters must be configured using the Monitor application via the MON port of the Micro Base Station. These parameters are necessary to enable remote management using SNMP or Telnet.

If the Micro Base Station is in the default factory configuration, or if the IP parameters of either the Data or Management port are known, you may configure the parameters using Telnet. You may also use AlvariCRAFT, provided you know the IP parameters of one port and the Authorized Managers list in the Micro Base Station is either empty (default) or includes the IP address of the AlvariCRAFT station.



NOTE

The default Installer password is "installer".

Refer to the AlvariCRAFT User Manual for information on how to use it.

The basic parameters are listed in [Table 3-1](#). Refer to [Chapter](#) for detailed information on the applicable parameters.

Table 3-1: Basic Micro Base Station Parameters

Management Option	Parameters
MGMT port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Management Port IP address ■ Management Port Subnet Mask ■ Management Port Gateway ■ Management Port Destination Subnet ■ Management Port Destination Subnet Mask ■ Management Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable ■ Management Port Auto Negotiation Option ■ Management Port Speed and Duplex (if Auto Negotiation Option is disabled)

Table 3-1: Basic Micro Base Station Parameters

Management Option	Parameters
DATA port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Data Port Subnet Mask ■ Data Port Gateway ■ Data Port Management VLAN ID ■ Data Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable ■ Data Port Auto Negotiation Option ■ Data Port Speed and Duplex (if Auto Negotiation Option is disabled)
Authorized Managers (per manager)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ IP Address ■ Send Traps ■ Read Community ■ Write Community

The following are the guidelines for configuring the basic parameters:

- All parameters of both ports should be configured. Otherwise, default values shall be used.
- If remote OOB management via a router connected to the Management port is used, the parameters should be configured to ensure different subnets for the Data port, the Management port (local OOB management) and the Management Port Destination. The Management Port Destination Subnet is the subnet behind a router connected to the Management port.

**NOTE**

It is highly recommended to use the Management port for local management only. Typically the port should be down (disconnected).

**CAUTION**

Do not configure the IP Address of the Management port to 0.0.0.0, as this will cause loss of management connectivity via the Data port.

- Authorized Manager(s) must be configured properly to enable remote management using AlvariSTAR (or another SNMP based application).

**NOTE**

If no Authorized Manager is defined in the device, it can be managed using SNMP by any station. If at least one Authorized Manager is defined, the device can be managed only by a station whose parameters match a defined Authorized Manager.

Once the basic parameters have been configured, additional parameters and services can be remotely configured using either SNMP management or the Monitor application via Telnet. Alternatively, it is possible to continue the configuration process using the Monitor application via the MON serial port.

Refer to [“Operation and Administration” on page 50](#) for information on how to access the Monitor application either via the MON port or via Telnet and how to use it.

3.2 Operation Verification

The following sections describe how to verify the correct functioning of the Outdoor Units, Indoor Units, Ethernet connection and data connectivity.

3.2.1 AU-ODU LEDs

To verify the correct operation of the AU-ODU, examine the LED indicators located on the bottom panel of the outdoor unit.

The following tables list the provided LEDs and their associated indications.



NOTE

Verifying the correct operation of the Outdoor Unit using the LEDs, as described below, is only possible after the configuration of basic parameters has been completed.

Table 3-2: AU-ODU LEDs

Name	Description	Functionality
PWR	Power indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - ODU is not powered ■ Green - ODU power is OK
ALARM	Not Used	(Red - blinks shortly during ODU power up)
ETH (WLNK)	Wireless link status indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - No SU is associated ■ Green - At least one SU is associated

3.2.2 Micro Base Station LEDs

To verify the correct operation of the Micro Base Station equipment, examine the LED indicators located on the front panel of the unit. The following table lists the LEDs of the Micro Base Station and their associated indications.

Table 3-3: Micro Base Station LEDs

Name	Description	Functionality
PWR	Power indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - Micro Base Station is not powered ■ Red - Input power failure ■ Green - Micro Base Station power is OK

Table 3-3: Micro Base Station LEDs

Name	Description	Functionality
ALRM	Micro Base Station alarm indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - Micro Base Station is OK ■ Red - Micro Base Station failure
SP	Spare	Not Used
EXT ALRM	External alarm indication	Red - External alarm (received via the ALRM IN port). Not applicable in the current release.
WACT	IDU transmission indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - No IDU transmission ■ Green - IDU transmission OK
WLINK	Wireless link status indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - No SU is associated ■ Green - At least one SU is associated
ODU1/ODU2 PWR	IDU to ODU Power Indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - No IDU to ODU power output ■ Red - IDU to ODU power output failed ■ Green - IDU to ODU power output OK
ODU1/ODU2 ALRM	IDU-ODU communication status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - IDU-ODU communication OK ■ Red - IDU-ODU communication failure

3.2.3 ODU Power Feeder LEDs

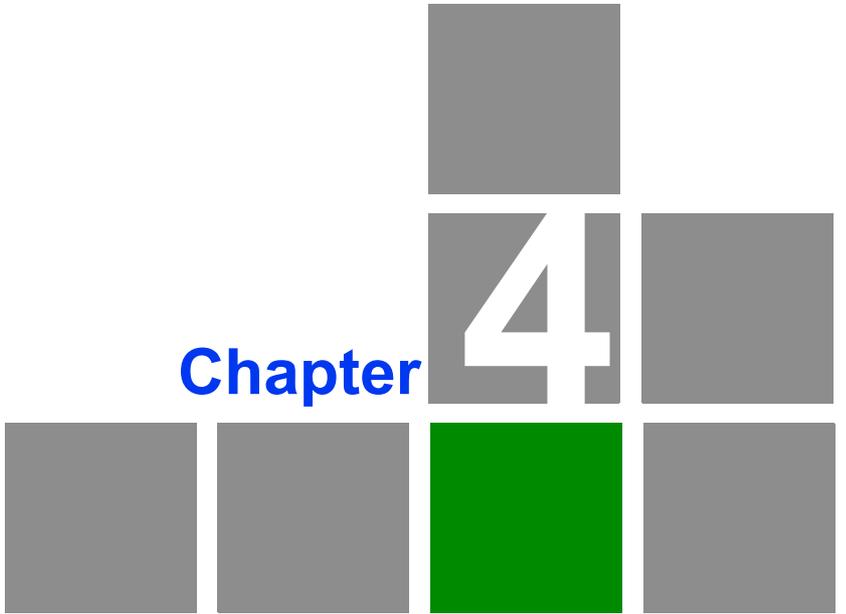
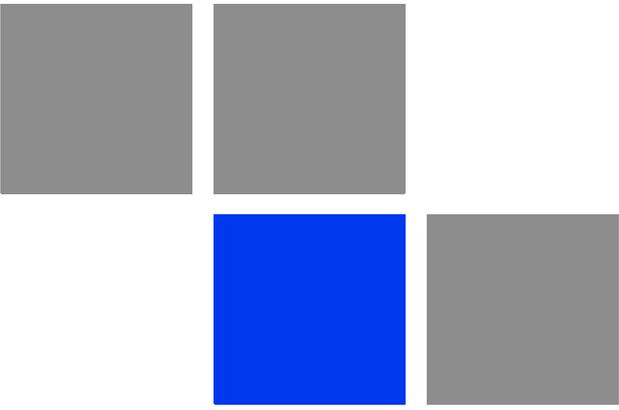
To verify the correct operation of the ODU Power Feeder, examine the LED indicators located on the front panel of the unit. The following table lists the LEDs of the ODU Power Feeder and their associated indications.

Table 3-4: ODU Power Feeder LEDs

Name	Description	Functionality
PWR	Input power indication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - ODU Power Feeder is not powered ■ Green - ODU Power Feeder power is OK
ODU PWR 1 - 4	Output power indications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off - AU-ODU-HP is not connected ■ Red - Power output problem (short or overload) ■ Green - AU-ODU-HP is connected and powered

3.2.4 Verifying the Ethernet Connection

After connecting the unit to an Ethernet outlet, verify that the Ethernet Integrity Indicator, which is the yellow LED embedded in the DATA port connector, is on. This indicates that the unit is connected to an Ethernet segment. The Ethernet Activity Indicator, which is the green embedded LED, should blink whenever the unit receives or transmits traffic on the DATA port.



Chapter

4

Operation and Administration

In This Chapter:

- “BreezeMAX System Management” on page 52
- “The Monitor Program” on page 54
- “The Micro Base Station's Main Menu” on page 58
- “Micro Base Station Menu” on page 60
- “Radio Cluster Menu” on page 96
- “ODU Menu” on page 99
- “Access Parameters Menu” on page 104
- “SU Menu” on page 112
- “Services Menu” on page 139
- “Parameters Summary” on page 192

4.1 BreezeMAX System Management

All BreezeMAX system components associated with a Micro Base station are managed via the Micro Base Station. The Subscriber Units are not accessed directly: each configuration change or status enquiry is sent to the Micro Base Station that communicates with the SUs.



NOTE

The SU can also be managed directly from its Ethernet port using the Installer Monitor program or the built-in Web Server. These options are available to support the installation process and enable special tests and performance monitoring at the SU's site.

The following management options are available:

- SNMP based management using AlvariSTAR (or another network management system customized to support management of BreezeMAX).
- Using Telnet to access the embedded Monitor application.
- Accessing the embedded Monitor application locally via the MON port.



NOTE

It is not possible to manage the Base Station via the wireless link (from the SU's side).

Two management access methods are available to support management using SNMP and/or Telnet:

- Out-Of-Band (OOB) management via the dedicated MGMT port.
- In-Band (IB) management via the DATA port.



NOTE

To enable remote management of devices behind the SU, including Voice and Networking Gateways, IP connectivity with the managed device is needed. This is possible only via the Data port.

Typically, BreezeMAX systems will be managed using AlvariSTAR or another SNMP based network management system.

This chapter describes how to manage the system using the Monitor application. For information on managing the system using AlvariSTAR refer to the Applicable AlvariSTAR documentation.

**NOTE**

To enable remote management (using SNMP and/or Telnet), the parameters of the applicable port (MGMT and/or DATA) must first be configured via the MON port. For details on the applicable parameters refer to [Section 4.4.3.2](#) (Management Port) and [Section 4.4.3.3](#) (Data Port).

4.2 The Monitor Program

4.2.1 Accessing the Monitor Program



To access the Monitor program via the MON connector:

- 1 Use the Monitor cable to connect the MON connector of the Micro Base Station to the COM port of your ASCII ANSI terminal or PC. The COM port connector on the Monitor cable is a 9 pin D type plug.
- 2 Run a terminal emulation program, such as HyperTerminal™.
- 3 Set the communication parameters as shown in the following table:

Table 4-1: COM Port Configuration

Parameter	Value
Baud Rate	9600
Data Bits	8
Stop Bits	1
Parity	None
Flow Control	Xon/Xoff
Port	Connected COM port

- 4 The password prompt is displayed. Enter the password and press the Enter key to get to the Main menu.



NOTE

There are 3 access levels, as described in [Section 4.2.1](#). The default password for each of the access levels is:

Access Level	Default Password
Administrator	admin
Installer	installer
Monitor	monitor

**To access the Monitor program using Telnet:**

- 1 The PC used for accessing the Monitor program should be configured according to the parameters configured for the applicable port (MGMT or DATA port).
- 2 If you connect directly to the MGMT or DATA port, use a crossed Ethernet cable.
- 3 Run the Telnet program connecting to the IP address of the connected port.
- 4 The Enter the password message is displayed. Enter the password and press the Enter key to get to the Main menu.

**NOTE**

If you forgot the Installer or Monitor password, the Administrator can log-in (with the Administrator password) and define a new password for Installer and/or Monitor access level.

If you forgot the Administrator password, type "help" to receive a challenge string consisting of 24 characters. Contact Alvarion's Customer Service and provide the challenge string (after user identification) to receive a temporary password. You can use this password only once to enter the program. The password must be changed during the session to a different "permanent" password. The administrator should be notified of this new password. Five consecutive errors in entering the temporary password will invalidate it. In this case, repeat this procedure to receive a new challenge string for a new temporary password.

4.2.2 Using the Monitor Program

This section describes the Monitor program structure and navigation rules.

- There are three access levels to the Monitor program. The available actions depend on the access level (password) used for accessing the program:
 - » **Administrator:** Read/Write permissions for all parameters. The default password is admin.
 - » **Installer:** Read-only permission for the Services menu, Read/Write permissions for all other options excluding the Change Password option. The default password is installer.
 - » **Monitor:** Read-only permissions for all parameters. The default password is monitor.
- Each menu or submenu specifies the unit type (BreezeMAX/ μ BST), the IP address of the port used for accessing the Monitor program (when using the

MON port, this is the IP address of the DATA port), the running SW version and a description of the menu. When accessing the Monitor program using Telnet, the IP address of the applicable port is displayed after the unit type.

- Each menu or submenu displays a list of numbered options. To access an option, enter the number of the required option at the > prompt and press the Enter key.
- At any point in the program, you can use the Esc key to return to the previous menu (one level up) without applying any change.
- The first selectable item in most menus is the Show option, enabling to view the current configuration of the applicable parameters. For some menus some additional status information is displayed.

For certain parameters, an updated value is applied only after reset or after entering a specific command. In these parameters, the configured value may differ from the actual value. If the configured value differs from the actual value both values will be displayed, where the first one is the configured value and the second is the actual value. For example: "Bandwidth (MHz): 1.75, 3.5" means that the configured bandwidth, to be applied after the next reset, is 1.75 MHz, and the current actual bandwidth is 3.5 MHz.

For certain parameters the actual values may not be available (such as when pre-configuring an AU that is not yet installed). For these parameters a value of NA (Not Available) will be displayed.

- The Update/Add options will display all applicable parameters line by line, allowing to conveniently edit all of them. The current value is displayed for each parameter. To keep the current value - press Enter. To change it - enter a new value and press Enter.
- Press the Tab key for context sensitive help text (where applicable).
- If an erroneous value was entered - the reason of the error or help text will be displayed, and the parameter entry text will be displayed again.
- Many menus include a Select By option, enabling to get a sub-menu for a selected entity according to the selection criteria.

- If the Monitor program is not used for 10 minutes, the session will be automatically terminated.

- Select the Exit option in the Main menu to exit the program and terminate the session.

4.3 The Micro Base Station's Main Menu

The Main menu of the Micro Base Station (μ BST) Monitor program includes the following options:

- 1 - Micro Base Station
- 2 - Radio Cluster
- 3 - ODU
- 4 - Access Parameters
- 5 - SU
- 6 - Services
- X - Exit

Following is a description of the menu items and the options available in each of the menu items.

4.3.1 Micro Base Station Menu

The Micro Base Station menu enables viewing general unit's details, viewing and configuring unit's parameters, managing the SW versions and viewing ports traffic counters. For more details refer to [Section 4.4](#).

4.3.2 Radio Cluster Menu

The Radio Cluster menu enables viewing the details of existing Radio Clusters, defining new Radio Clusters, updating the parameters of an existing Radio Cluster and deleting a Radio Cluster from the database. For details refer to [Section 4.5](#).

4.3.3 ODU Menu

The ODU menu enables viewing the status and configuration details of existing ODUs, configuring the parameters of new ODUs including pre-configuration of ODUs that are not yet installed, updating the parameters of existing ODUs and deleting ODUs from the database. For details refer to [Section 4.6](#).

4.3.4 Access Parameters Menu

The Access Parameters menu enables viewing and configuring MAC, Phy, Multirate and other parameters that affect the wireless link. It also enables viewing and updating Channel's parameters. For details refer to [Section 4.7](#).

4.3.5 SU Menu

The SU menu enables viewing summary information of all relevant SUs, configuring the parameters of a selected SU and defining new SUs. It also enables managing a selected SU's SW versions and viewing its current status, configuration and performance information. For more details refer to [Section 4.8](#).

4.3.6 Services Menu

The Service menu enables viewing, updating and adding service profiles and subscribers, and allocating services to subscribers. It also enables viewing and updating filtering rules and the MAC Address Deny List. For more details refer to [Section 4.9](#).

4.3.7 Exit

Select the Exit option (X) to exit the Monitor program and terminate the Telnet session.

4.4 Micro Base Station Menu

The Micro Base Station menu includes the following options:

- Show
- Unit Control
- Configuration
- Alarms and Traps
- Performance Monitoring
- Licenses

4.4.1 Show

Select this option to view general unit's details as well as the current value/selected option of configurable parameters.

- Unit Details
 - » IDU Serial Number
 - » IDU Main Card HW Revision
 - » IDU Main Card HW Configuration
 - » IDU IF Card HW Revision
 - » IDU IF Card HW Configuration
 - » IDU Boot Version
 - » IDU Temperature (Celsius): If the IDU temperature exceeds 60° C, a trap will be generated. A second trap will be sent if the temperature exceeds 70°C. The unit will shut-down if its temperature exceeds 75° C.
 - » IDU Type: Two Channels or Four Channels
 - » IDU Cumulative Power On Time (hours): The cumulative power-on time of the IDU since first power-up.

- » Diversity Mode

- » Status

- SW Versions

- » Main SW File

- » Main SW Version

- » Shadow SW File

- » Shadow SW Version

- » Running From (Main or Shadow)

- » Boot SW Version

For more details refer to [Section 4.4.2.4](#).

- General Parameters

- » Device Name

- » Device Location

- » Operator ID

- » Cell ID

- » ATPC Enable/Disable

- » Optimal Uplink RSSI (dBm)

For details refer to [Section 4.4.3.1](#).

- Licenses Status

- » CPEs License Bank status

- » Base Station Licenses Status

For details refer to [Section 4.4.6](#).

- Management Port Configuration
 - » Management Port MAC Address
 - » Management Port IP Address
 - » Management Port Subnet Mask
 - » Management Port Gateway
 - » Management Port Dest Subnet
 - » Management Port Dest Subnet Mask
 - » Management Port Auto Negotiation
 - » Management Port Speed and Duplex
 - » Management Port Link Status (Up or Down)
 - » Management Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable

For details refer to [Section 4.4.3.2](#).

- Data Port Configuration
 - » Data Port MAC Address
 - » Data Port IP Address
 - » Data Port Subnet Mask
 - » Data Port Gateway
 - » Data Port Management VLAN
 - » Data Port Auto Negotiation
 - » Data Port Speed and Duplex
 - » Data Port Link Status (Up or Down)
 - » Data Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable

For details refer to [Section 4.4.3.3](#).

- Authorized Managers (per manager)

- » IP Address
- » Send Traps
- » Read Community
- » Write Community

For details refer to [Section 4.4.3.4](#).

- Bridge

- » Bridge Aging Time

For details refer to [Section 4.4.3.5](#).

- Voice

- » DRAP TTL Retries

For details refer to [Section 4.4.3.6](#).

- MAC Parameters

- » Sector ID
- » ARQ Enable/Disable
- » Maximum Cell Radius (km)

For details refer to [Section 4.7.1](#).

- Phy Parameters

- » Bandwidth (MHz)

For details refer to [Section 4.7.2](#).

- Multirate Parameters
 - » Multirate Enable/Disable
 - » Uplink Basic Rate
 - » Downlink Basic Rate

For details refer to [Section 4.7.4](#).

- Voice Parameters:
 - » Maximum Number of Voice Calls

For details refer to [Section 4.7.5](#).

4.4.2 Unit Control

The Unit Control menu enables changing the access Passwords and the Monitor Inactivity Timeout, resetting the μ BST, reverting the μ BST to the factory default configuration, managing the SW versions of the unit and creating backup files.

The Unit Control menu includes the following options:

- Change Password
- Reset
- Set Factory Defaults
- SW Versions Control
- Create Backup
- Monitor Inactivity Timeout

4.4.2.1 Change Password

For security and control reasons, the Change Password option is available only for users with Administration access rights. The Change Password option enables defining the passwords for each of the three different access levels: Administrator, Installer and Monitor. After changing the password for a selected access level, you will be prompted to re-enter the new password for confirmation.

**NOTE**

For security reasons, the passwords do not change after performing the Set Factory Defaults operation. For the same reason, the passwords cannot be managed using SNMP and are not included in backup configuration files.

Valid passwords: Up to 16 printable characters, case sensitive.

The default passwords are:

Table 4-2: Default Passwords

Access Level	Default Password
Administrator	admin
Installer	installer
Monitor	monitor

4.4.2.2 Reset Unit

Select this option to reset the μ BST. To avoid unintentional reset, you will be prompted to confirm the reset request. Changes to some of the configurable parameters are applied only after reset. Refer to [Section 4.9](#) for information on which parameters are changeable in run time and which changes are applied only after reset.

4.4.2.3 Set Factory Defaults

Select this option to set the μ BST parameters (excluding the access Passwords) to their factory default values. Refer to [Section 4.10](#) for information on the factory default values of these parameters. The parameters will revert to their default values after the next reset.

**CAUTION**

Setting the parameters of the μ BST to their default values will disable remote management of the unit since this affects the IP and Ethernet parameters and will delete all Authorized Managers.

4.4.2.4 SW Version Control

The μ BST can contain two SW versions:

- **Main:** Each time the μ BST resets it will reboot using the version defined as Main.

- **Shadow:** Normally the Shadow version is the backup version. Each time a new SW File is downloaded to the μ BST, it will be stored as a Shadow version, replacing the previous Shadow Version.

The typical process of upgrading to a new SW version includes the following steps:

- 1 Download the new SW File to the μ BST. It will be stored as the Shadow version.
- 2 Reset and run the module from its Shadow version. Note that at this stage, if a reset were to occur, the unit will return to the previous Main version.
- 3 If you want to continue using the new version, swap the Shadow and Main versions. The new version is now defined as Main, and will be used each time the module reboots. The previous version is defined now as Shadow.

Each SW version includes two identifiers:

- SW File, which is the name of the downloaded SW file. This name does not necessarily include clear identification of the SW version number.
- SW Version, which provides the software version number.

The SW Version Control submenu includes the following options:

- Show versions
- Run from Shadow
- Set as Main

4.4.2.4.1 Show Versions

Select this option to view the current available versions and the running version:

- Main SW File
- Main SW Version
- Shadow SW File
- Shadow SW Version
- Running From: Main or Shadow

- Boot SW Version

4.4.2.4.2 Run from Shadow

Select the Run from Shadow option to reset the μ BST and run the Shadow version after power up. To avoid unintentional actions you will be prompted to confirm the request.

4.4.2.4.3 Set as Main

When the μ BST is running the Shadow version (after selecting Reset and Run from Shadow), it will boot from the Main version after the next reset. Select the Set as Main option if you want to swap versions so that the running version will become the Main version and will be the version to be used after reset. To avoid unintentional actions you will be prompted to confirm the request.

4.4.2.5 Create Backup

The Create Backup option enables creating backup files of the μ BST configuration. The backup file contains copies of all the applicable configuration files and databases in the system.

The following backup file types can be created:

- **Full:** The entire μ BST configuration (excluding Passwords and basic IP parameters of the MGMT and DATA ports - IP Address, Subnet Mask and Default Gateway).
- **Profiles:** All the profiles associated with services (Service Profiles, Forwarding Rules, Priority Classifiers, QoS Profiles).
- **Profiles and Services:** All the profiles and configurations associated with service (General Service parameters, Subscribers, Services, Service Profiles, Forwarding Rules, Priority Classifiers, QoS Profiles).
- **Filtering:** All the configurations of Filtering Rules, Interface Filtering and MAC Address Deny List.
- **Traps Configuration:** The configuration parameters for all traps.

Upon selecting the backup type option, you will be requested to confirm the request. After confirmation, a message is displayed indicating that the backup file creation is in process. Upon successful completion of the process, a completion message will be displayed.

If a backup file of the same type already exists in the μ BST, you will be asked whether to overwrite the existing file. If there was an error in the process of creating a backup file, an error message will be displayed, specifying the reason.



To upload/download the Backup File:

After the backup file has been created, it can be uploaded using a DOS based TFTP Client application to a target directory. To upload the file, use the command: *tftp -i <Port IP address> get <file name> <destination address>*.

The default file name is:

- Full: backup.res.
- Profiles: profiles.res
- Profiles and Services: profiles_srvcs.res
- Filtering: filtering.res
- Traps Configuration: traps_config.res

The file is encrypted and cannot be edited. However, it can be downloaded to other μ BST(s) using a DOS based TFTP Client application with the command: *tftp i <Port IP address> put <file name>*.

The target μ BST will decrypt the backup file, extract all the configuration files and databases and will store them, replacing existing files/databases. The μ BST should be reset to apply the downloaded configuration.



NOTE

To avoid loss of connectivity behind a router, the basic IP parameters of the MGMT and DATA ports (IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway) are not changed when loading a Full backup file to the μ BST. The values of these parameters configured in the target μ BST before the loading process, are maintained.

4.4.2.6 Monitor Inactivity Timeout

The Monitor Inactivity Timeout parameter determines the amount of inactive time following which the unit automatically exits the Monitor program.

The time out duration can range from 0 to 60 minutes. 0 means no inactivity timeout.

The default value is 10 minutes.

4.4.3 Configuration

The Micro Base station Configuration menu enables viewing and updating general parameters, parameters that define the functionality of the MGMT and DATA ports, the properties of authorized management stations and bridging functionality. It also enables configuring per Telnet session the types of messages that will be displayed upon occurrence of various events.

The following are the guidelines for configuring these parameters:

- All IP parameters of both ports should be configured. Otherwise, default values will be used.
- The Destination Subnet parameters of the MGMT port enable defining an additional subnet of stations that can manage the device when connected via a router to the MGMT port. If OOB management via a router connected to the MGMT port is used, the parameters should be configured to ensure different subnets for the Data port, the Management port and the Management Port Destination Subnet.
- Authorized Manager(s) must be configured properly to enable remote management using AlvariSTAR (or another SNMP based application).

The Configuration menu includes the following options:

- General Parameters
- Management Port
- Data Port
- Authorized Managers
- Bridge
- Voice
- Debug Stream

4.4.3.1 General Parameters

Select this option to view or configure the general μ BST parameters:

4.4.3.1.1 Device Name

The Device Name parameter provides identification information for the μ BST.

The device name consists of up to 255 printable characters.

The default Device Name is a null string (empty).

4.4.3.1.2 Device Location

The Device Location parameter provides location information for the μ BST.

The location name consists of up to 255 printable characters.

The default Device Location is a null string (empty).

4.4.3.1.3 Local Clock Setting

The Local Clock Setting menu enables viewing/updating the date and time setting for the device. Accurate clock settings in all managed devices are necessary to ensure a usable time stamp in all traps sent to the network management system. The Local Clock Setting menu enables also viewing/updating SNTP parameters to support automatic clock settings using SNTP (Simple Network Time Protocol) for acquiring the time from SNTP server(s). If SNTP is enabled and an SNTP server is available, the Date and Time used by the device will be updated every 12 hours according to information acquired from the SNTP server. Local setting of Date and Time parameters is applicable only if SNTP is disabled or if no SNTP server is found.

When SNTP is enabled, the device operates as an SNTP client supporting SNTP version 4 as defined in RFC 4330. The device can connect to SNTP servers only via the Data port, using the Management VLAN ID defined for this port. Two SNTP servers can be defined: Primary and Secondary. Following 3 unsuccessful attempts to connect to the Primary server, the device will try connecting to the Secondary server. If no server is found, the device will continue using the last known local Date and Time. The device will send keep-alive messages every 15 minutes in order to check the status of the server(s).

The configurable Local Clock Setting parameters are:

4.4.3.1.3.1 Date

The date using the format DD.MM.YYYY.

4.4.3.1.3.2 Time

The time, using the format HH:MM:SS (24 hours format).

4.4.3.1.3.3 SNTP Parameters

The SNTP Parameters submenu enables viewing the current SNTP parameters, including the Status of each defined server (Up/Down) and indication of the currently active server (if any). It also enables updating the following SNTP parameters:

4.4.3.1.3.3.1 Enable SNTP

This parameter defines whether operation as an SNTP client is enabled or disabled.

Enable SNTP is applied only after system reset.

The default is Disable.

4.4.3.1.3.3.2 Primary Server IP

The IP address of the primary SNTP server. The IP address of the SNTP server should be located in a subnet connected to the Data Port. There is no SNTP support on the Management Port.

The default Primary Server IP is 69.36.224.15.

4.4.3.1.3.3.3 Secondary Server IP

The IP address of the secondary SNTP server. The IP address of the SNTP server should be located in a subnet connected to the Data Port. There is no SNTP support on the Management Port.

The default Secondary Server IP is 131.188.3.221.

4.4.3.1.3.3.4 Local Clock UTC Difference

This is the offset of the local time from UTC (Coordinated Universal Time).

The range is from -12:00 up to +13:00 (hours) in 30 minutes resolution. The format must be either -XX:YY or +XX:YY where YY is either 00 or 30.

The default is +02:00.

4.4.3.1.3.3.5 Daylight Saving

The Daylight Saving parameter is used to enable or disable the daylight saving feature using the following Daylight Saving Start Date, End Date and Advance Factor parameters.

The default is Disable.

4.4.3.1.3.3.6 Daylight Saving Start Date

When Daylight Saving is enabled, this parameter defines the date for starting the daylight saving feature. At the beginning of this date (midnight at the beginning of this date), the clock will be advanced by the amount of hours specified by the Daylight Saving Advance Factor (see below).

Use the format dd:mm to define the date and month at which to start activating the Daylight Saving feature.

4.4.3.1.3.3.7 Daylight Saving Stop Date

When Daylight Saving is enabled, this parameter defines the date for ending the daylight saving feature (at “Daylight Saving Advance Factor” hours after midnight at the end of this date).

Use the format dd:mm to define the date and month at which to end activating the Daylight Saving feature.

4.4.3.1.3.3.8 Daylight Saving Advance Factor

This parameter enables configuring the amount of time by which the clock should be advanced during the daylight saving period.

The range is from 0 to 4:45 (hours) in steps of 15 minutes.

4.4.3.1.4 ATPC Parameters

BreezeMAX employs an Automatic Transmit Power Control (ATPC) algorithm to dynamically adapt the transmit power of each SU so that it is received by the AU-ODU at an optimal level. The algorithm is managed by the μ BST and optimal values are calculated separately for each SU based on the actual level at which it is received by the AU-ODU. MAP messages transmitted to the SUs include information on the estimated up/down power level change required to achieve optimal transmit power level.

The ATPC menu enables viewing/updating the following parameters:

4.4.3.1.4.1 ATPC Enable/Disable

The ATPC Enable/Disable parameter controls whether the ATPC algorithm will be used to determine current optimal transmit level for each SU served by the μ BST.

The default is Enable.



NOTE

The ATPC algorithm should always be enabled. The option to disable it is available to support certain tests. After each reset, the μ BST boots with the ATPC enabled, disregarding its status before the device was reset.

4.4.3.1.4.2 Optimal Uplink RSSI

The Optimal Uplink RSSI sets the target level at which all transmissions should be received by the AU-ODUs for optimal performance.

The range is -103 to -60 (dBm).

The default is -73 dBm.

4.4.3.1.5 Cell Parameters

The Cell parameters provide a unique identifier for the μ BST. Updated Cell parameters are applied after resetting the μ BST. The Cell menu enables viewing/updating the following parameters:

4.4.3.1.5.1 Operator ID

A unique identifier of the network. The same Operator ID must be defined for all Base Stations/Micro Base Stations in the network, and it should not be used by any Base Station/Micro Base Station belonging to another network in the same area.

The Operator ID consists of 3 groups of up to three digits each, where the range for each group is 0 to 255.

The default Operator ID is 186.190.0.

Changes in the value configured for the Operator ID are applied only after reset.

4.4.3.1.5.2 Cell ID

A unique identifier of μ BST. The same Cell ID should not be used by any other Base Station/Micro Base Station belonging to the network.

The Cell ID consists of 2 groups of up to three digits each, where the range for each group is 0 to 255.

The default Cell ID is 0.0.

Changes in the value configured for the Cell ID are applied only after reset.

4.4.3.1.6 Statistics Collection Interval

The Statistics Collection feature enables collection of capacity demand and usage information, providing means for calculating the utilization level of available resources.

The Statistics Collection feature is based on accumulating the data collected in predefined time intervals. An external application should be used to fetch the buffered data from the Micro Base Station using SNMP, store it and perform the required resource utilization analysis on the stored information. For more details refer to the Statistics Collection document.

The Statistics Collection Interval parameter defines the Collection Interval (in seconds) for the Micro Base Station. The range is from 30 to 900 seconds using 30 seconds steps. The default Statistics Collection Interval is 900 seconds (15 minutes).

Note that when the PMTM feature (see below) is enabled the Statistics Collection Interval is set to its default value of 15 minutes and cannot be modified.

4.4.3.1.7 PMTM

The PMTM feature enable managing the collection of Performance Monitoring and Traffic Monitoring data. When enabled, traffic (transferred data) information and performance (link quality indicators) statistics are collected by the device and stored in dedicated files that can be retrieved by the network management system or any other external application, using TFTP. Whenever a new file is generated, a suitable trap is sent. Analysis of the data can be used for various purposes such as calculating capacity utilization and over subscription, radio planning and problem identification. Each file contains the accumulated traffic data and the per-SU and per-Micro Base Station performance statistics for a 15 minutes interval.

The PMTM menu includes the following options:

4.4.3.1.7.1 PMTM Status

The PMTM Status option allows enabling or disabling the PMTM feature.

The default is Disable.

4.4.3.1.7.2 Last Generated PMTM File

The Last Generated PMTM File option enables viewing the name of the last generated file. The file name includes identification details of the source Base Station and time and date of file generation in the following format:

PM_<Device Name>_yyyymmddhhmm.xml.zip. mm (minutes) can be 00, 15, 30 or 45.

4.4.3.1.7.3 Show PMTM Directory

Select this option to view details on the current files stored in the PMTM directory of the device. The device can store up to 4 PMTM files. If 4 files are already stored, a new file will replace the oldest one (first in first out).

4.4.3.1.7.4 Clear PMTM Directory

Select this option to clear the PMTM directory.

4.4.3.2 Management Port Parameters

These parameters define the IP and Ethernet parameters for the Management (MGMT) port connecting the base station to the backbone.



NOTE

It is highly recommended to use the Management port for local management only. Typically the port should be down (disconnected).

The Ethernet interface of the MGMT port in the μ BST can be configured to operate either using Auto Negotiation or at a fixed speed/duplex mode (enabling selection between 10 Mbps Half Duplex, 10 Mbps Full Duplex, 100 Mbps Half Duplex or 100 Mbps Full Duplex).

4.4.3.2.1 Management Port IP Address

The IP address of the Management port.

The default is 10.0.0.1.



CAUTION

Do not configure the IP Address of the Management port to 0.0.0.0, as this will cause loss of management connectivity via the DATA port.

4.4.3.2.2 Management Port Subnet Mask

The Subnet mask of the Management port.

The default is 255.255.255.0.

In a binary representation (32 bits) the string must comprise a series of contiguous binary '1's starting from the MSB, followed by a series of contiguous binary '0's. 0.0.0.0 (all zeros, meaning "nothing") and 255.255.255.255 (all ones, meaning "this address only") are illegal and will be rejected.

**NOTE**

The local subnet of the Management port (defined by the Management Port IP Address and Management Port Subnet Mask parameters), must differ from the local subnet of the Data port (defined by the Data Port IP Address and Data Port Subnet Mask parameters) and from the subnet that is used as the Static Route for remote management via the Management port (defined by the Management Port Dest Subnet and Management Port Dest Subnet Mask parameters).

4.4.3.2.3 Management Port Gateway

The Gateway IP address of the Management port.

The default is 0.0.0.0 (meaning no default gateway).

4.4.3.2.4 Management Port Dest Subnet and Management Port Dest Subnet Mask

The Destination Subnet parameters define a Static Route, which is an IP subnet of stations that can manage the device when connected via a router to the Management port. The Static Route is applicable only when remote management is enabled for both the Management and Data ports (i.e., when both Management Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable and Data Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable parameters are set to Enable).

The default is 0.0.0.0 for both parameters (meaning no Static Route).

In a binary representation (32 bits) the subnet mask must comprise a series of contiguous binary '1's starting from the MSB, followed by a series of contiguous binary '0's.

**NOTE**

The Management Port Gateway, Destination Subnet and Destination Subnet Mask are grouped together. Exiting the configuration process (e.g. by pressing the Esc key) after configuring just the first one or two parameters in this group will discard the changes made.

The subnet that is used as the Static Route for remote management via the Management port (defined by the Management Port Dest Subnet and Management Port Dest Subnet Mask parameters) must differ from the local subnet of the Management port (defined by the Management Port IP Address and Management Port Subnet Mask parameters) and from the local subnet of the Data port (defined by the Data Port IP Address and Data Port Subnet Mask parameters).

4.4.3.2.5 Auto Negotiation Option

The Management port of the μ BST can be configured to operate with Auto Negotiation Option enabled or disabled.

The default is Enabled.

When the Auto Negotiation Option is enabled, the Speed and Duplex parameter in the relevant Show menus displays the detected operation mode. When the Auto Negotiation Option is disabled, the Speed and Duplex parameter in the relevant

Show menus displays the configured operation mode. Upon selection of the Disable option, the user is prompted to select the speed and duplex:

4.4.3.2.5.1 Select Link Speed and Duplex

This option is applicable only when the Auto Negotiation Option is disabled. The available options are 10 Mbps Half Duplex, 10 Mbps Full Duplex, 100 Mbps Half Duplex and 100 Mbps Full Duplex.

4.4.3.2.6 Management Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable

The Management Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable parameter allows enabling/disabling remote management traffic via a router connected to the Management port. This parameter does not affect management traffic via the local subnet defined by the Management Port IP Address and Management Port Subnet Mask.

If remote management for the Management port is disabled, then the unit can be managed by any PC on any of the following subnets (provided the PC is defined as an Authorized Manager):

- A** The local subnet of the Management port (defined by the Management Port IP Address and Management Port Subnet Mask parameters).
- B** The local subnet of the Data port (defined by the Data Port IP Address and Data Port Subnet Mask parameters).
- C** Any subnet reachable via the default Gateway of the Data port (if Data Port Gateway is defined).

If remote management is enabled for both the Data Port and the Management port, then the unit can be managed by any PC on any of the following subnets (provided the PC is defined as an Authorized Manager):

- A** The local subnet of the Management port (defined by the Management Port IP Address and Management Port Subnet Mask parameters).
- B** The local subnet of the Data port (defined by the Data Port IP Address and Data Port Subnet Mask parameters).
- C** Any subnet reachable via the default Gateway of the Data port (if Data Port Gateway is defined).
- D** The Static Route subnet (defined by the Management Port Dest Subnet and Management Port Dest Subnet Mask parameters) reachable via the Gateway of the Management port.

**NOTE**

To prevent the undesired situation where remote management traffic is unintentionally disabled in both the Management and Data ports, the Data Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable parameter will be automatically forced to Enabled upon disabling the Management Port Management Traffic, and vice versa.

The Management Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable parameter is available only in the Monitor program. It is not available when using SNMP.

4.4.3.3 Data Port Parameters

These parameters define the IP and Ethernet parameters for the Data (DATA) port connecting the μ BST to the backbone.

The Ethernet interface of the MGMT port in the μ BST can be configured to operate either using Auto Negotiation or at a fixed speed/duplex mode (enabling selection between 10 Mbps Half Duplex, 10 Mbps Full Duplex, 100 Mbps Half Duplex or 100 Mbps Full Duplex).

4.4.3.3.1 Data Port IP Address

The IP address of the Data port.

The default is 1.1.1.3.

4.4.3.3.2 Data Port Subnet Mask

The subnet mask of the Data port.

The default is 255.255.255.0.

In a binary representation (32 bits) the string must comprise a series of contiguous binary '1's starting from the MSB, followed by a series of contiguous binary '0's. 0.0.0.0 (all zeros, meaning "nothing") and 255.255.255.255 (all ones, meaning "this address only") are illegal and will be rejected.

**NOTE**

The local subnet of the Data port (defined by the Data Port IP Address and Data Port Subnet Mask parameters), must differ from the local subnet of the Management port (defined by the Management Port IP Address and Management Port Subnet Mask parameters) and from the subnet that is used as the Static Route for remote management via the Management port (defined by the Management Port Dest Subnet and Management Port Dest Subnet Mask parameters).

4.4.3.3.3 Data Port Gateway

The IP address of the default Gateway for the Data port.

The default is 0.0.0.0 (meaning no default gateway).

4.4.3.3.4 Data Port Management VLAN

This parameter defines the VLAN ID for management frames via the Data port. If a value from 0 to 4094 is configured for the Management VLAN ID, then the device will accept management frames only if their VLAN tag is the same as this value.

The Data Port Management VLAN is used also for communication with SNTP and PF (Policy Function) servers (if used).

Available values are 0-4094 or null (empty) for No VLAN.

The default is null (No VLAN).



CAUTION

The Data Port Management VLAN is updated in run-time (without reset).

4.4.3.3.5 Auto Negotiation Option

The Data port of the μ BST can be configured to operate with Auto Negotiation Option enabled or disabled.

The default is Enabled.

When the Auto Negotiation Option is enabled, the Speed and Duplex parameter in the relevant Show menus displays the detected operation mode. When the Auto Negotiation Option is disabled, the Speed and Duplex parameter in the relevant Show menus displays the configured operation mode. Upon selection of the Disable option, the user is prompted to select the speed and duplex:

4.4.3.3.5.1 Select Link Speed and Duplex

This option is applicable only when the Auto Negotiation Option is disabled. The available options are 10 Mbps Half Duplex, 10 Mbps Full Duplex, 100 Mbps Half Duplex and 100 Mbps Full Duplex.

4.4.3.3.6 Data Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable

The Data Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable parameter allows enabling/disabling remote management traffic via a router connected to the DATA port. This parameter does not affect management traffic via the local subnet defined by the Data Port IP Address and Data Port Subnet Mask.

If remote management for the Data port is disabled, then the unit can be managed by any PC on any of the following subnets (provided the PC is defined as an Authorized Manager):

- A** The local subnet of the Management port (defined by the Management Port IP Address and Management Port Subnet Mask parameters).

- B** The local subnet of the Data port (defined by the Data Port IP Address and Data Port Subnet Mask parameters).
- C** Any subnet reachable via the Gateway of the Management port (if defined). Note that in this case the Static Route (if defined) is ignored, and the defined Gateway becomes the default Gateway, enabling remote management by any PC reachable via the Gateway.

If remote management is enabled for both the Data Port and the Management port, then the unit can be managed by any PC on any of the following subnets (provided the PC is defined as an Authorized Manager):

- A** The local subnet of the Management port (defined by the Management Port IP Address and Management Port Subnet Mask parameters).
- B** The local subnet of the Data port (defined by the Data Port IP Address and Data Port Subnet Mask parameters).
- C** Any subnet reachable via the default Gateway of the Data port (if Data Port Gateway is defined).
- D** The remote Static Route subnet (defined by the Management Port Dest Subnet and Management Port Dest Subnet Mask parameters) reachable via the Gateway of the Management port.



NOTE

To prevent the undesired situation where remote management traffic is unintentionally disabled in both the Management and Data ports, the Management Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable parameter will be automatically forced to Enabled upon disabling the Data Port Management Traffic, and vice versa.

The Data Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable parameter is available only in the Monitor program. It is not available when using SNMP.

4.4.3.4 Authorized Managers

The Authorized Managers submenu enables defining the properties of management stations that are allowed to manage the Micro Base Station using SNMP, including the SUs associated with it.



NOTE

If no Authorized Manager is defined in the device, it can be managed using SNMP by any station, with the default Read and Write Communities. If at least one Authorized Manager is defined, the device can be managed only by a station whose parameters match a defined Authorized Manager.

The Authorized Manager submenu includes the following options:

4.4.3.4.1 Show All

Select this option to view the details of all currently defined authorized managers.

4.4.3.4.2 Select

This option enables selecting an existing authorized manager for viewing or updating its properties or for deleting it from the database. The selection is based on the authorized manager's IP address. Refer to the following Add section for details on the configurable parameters.

4.4.3.4.3 Add

Select this option to add a new authorized manager. Up to 10 Authorized Manager can be defined. The following parameters can be configured:

4.4.3.4.3.1 IP Address

The IP address of the Authorized Manager.

4.4.3.4.3.2 Send Traps

The Send Traps parameters whether to enable or disable sending of traps to the Authorized Manager.

4.4.3.4.3.3 Read Community

The SNMP Read Community to be used by the Authorized Manager. A null Read Community means that the read (get) operation can only be performed using the Write Community.

Valid Community strings: Up to 23 printable characters, case sensitive.

4.4.3.4.3.4 Write Community

The SNMP Write Community to be used by the Authorized Manager. A null Write Community means that the Authorized Manager has Read only access rights.

Valid Community strings: Up to 23 printable characters, case sensitive.

4.4.3.5 Bridge

The Bridge submenu enables configuring the **Bridge Aging Time** parameter, setting the aging time for all addresses in the Forwarding Data Base.

The available values are from 1 to 1440 minutes, or 0 for no aging.

The default is 10 minutes.

4.4.3.6 Voice

The Voice submenu enables configuring the parameters that affect the DRAP mechanism. The Voice submenu includes the following parameters:

4.4.3.6.1 DRAP TTL Retries

The DRAP TTL Retries parameter sets the upper limit of TTL retries for gateways that support the DRAP protocol before concluding that the gateway is no longer active and removing it from the database. The TTL retry time (the maximum time between two consecutive Allocation Requests) is 255 seconds.

The range is from 1 to 100.

The default is 4.



NOTE

During SW download to a gateway, which may take up to almost 15 minutes under worst conditions, the DRAP protocol is not active. If the gateway is removed from the database before SW download is completed, the download process will fail. During SW download, the DRAP TTL Retries parameter should be set to its default value of 4 (equivalent to 17 minutes).

4.4.3.6.2 DRAP Signaling QoS Profile

The DRAP Signaling QoS Profile option enables viewing the parameters of the relevant QoS Profiles and selecting the QoS Profile that will be assigned to the signaling connections upon detection of a DRAP client by the NPU. The Default QoS Profile used by the system is a Real-Time (RT) QoS Profile with CIR=1024 Kbps and CT=Short. The user can elect to use the Advanced Profile that will provide better overall performance. The Advanced QoS Profile is a Real Time (RT) QoS profile with CIR=256 Kbps and CT=Long.

Note that although a change the DRAP Signaling QoS Profile takes effect in run-time (no need for reset), each existing Service Profile (either Voice or L2) that is used by a DRAP device should to be disabled and re-enabled for the new settings to take effect. Alternatively, the Base Station may be reset.

The default option is the Default QoS Profile. It is recommended to change it to Advanced QoS Profile.

4.4.3.7 Debug Stream

The Debug Stream submenu enables configuring the types of messages that will be displayed during the Telnet session upon the occurrence of various events. These messages are typically used for investigating various problem situations, and many of them are meaningful only to Alvarion's technicians. The DS Class Enable and DS Class Disable options can be used to enable or disable various classes of messages. The classes of messages that can be controlled include:

- ERR: Error messages that should not occur under regular conditions.

- SYS: Indication of important events and alarms.
- TRAP: Text messages displaying the information supplied by relevant traps.

The default for all classes is Disable.



NOTE

Enabling the display of selected classes is applicable only for the current Telnet session. These parameters affect only the session and are not stored in the device. Upon starting a new session, or after resetting the unit, all classes are disabled.

4.4.4 Alarms and Traps

The Alarms and Traps menu enables viewing the active alarms or the traps log, filtering the displayed traps and enabling/disabling traps. The available options are:

- Show Active Alarms
- Traps Display Filter
- Show Traps Log
- Trap Configuration

4.4.4.1 Show Active Alarms

Select to view the currently active alarms. For more details on active alarms refer to the Traps and Alarms document.

4.4.4.2 Traps Display Filter

Select to view/update the filtering criteria for the Traps Log display. The configurable filtering criteria are:

4.4.4.2.1 Minimum Severity

The Minimum Severity parameter enables defining the minimum severity filter. Traps whose severity is below the defined severity will not be displayed.

The options are Critical, Major, Minor, Warning and Info.

The default is Info severity, which means that all the traps in the log will be displayed.

4.4.4.2.2 Days

The Days parameter enables defining the period for which traps will be displayed.

The available options are from 1 to 31 days. Only traps that occurred within the last N days, where N is the value selected for this parameter, will be displayed.

The default is 31 days.

4.4.4.3 Show Traps Log

Select to view the traps log. The traps will be displayed based on the filtering criteria defined by the Minimum Severity and Days parameters in the Traps Display Filtering option, up to a maximum of the last 1000 traps. For more details refer to the Traps and Alarms document.

4.4.4.4 Trap Configuration

The Trap Configuration menu enables viewing current parameters of all traps and updating the parameters of a selected trap. It also enables viewing traps with modified parameters (different from the default) and restoring the configuration of all modified traps to their default values.

The available options are:

- Show Trap Status
- Admin Status
- Severity
- Suppression Interval

4.4.4.4.1 Show Traps Status

Select this option to view a list of all traps and their parameters. For each trap, the following details are displayed:

- Trap ID
- Name
- Admin Status (the default Admin Status for all traps is Enabled)
- Default Severity

- Current Severity
- Suppression Interval (in seconds. The default Suppression Interval is 0, which means no suppression)

4.4.4.4.2 Admin Status

The Admin Status menu enables viewing a list of all traps with Admin Status Disabled, updating the Admin Status of a selected trap and restoring the Admin Status of all traps to the default Enabled status. The Admin Status menu includes the following options:

- Show Disabled Traps List: Displays all traps with Admin Status Disabled (the default Admin Status for all traps is Enabled).
- Update: Enables modifying the Admin Status of a selected trap.
- Restore Defaults: Enables restoring the Admin Status of all traps to Enable.

4.4.4.4.3 Severity

The Severity menu enables viewing a list of all traps with Severity that differs from the default severity, updating the Severity of a selected trap and restoring the Severities of all traps to the default severities. The Severity menu includes the following options:

- **Show Traps with Modified Severity:** Displays all traps with Severity that differs from the default severity.
- **Update:** Enables modifying the Severity of a selected trap.
- **Restore Defaults:** Enables restoring the Severities of all traps to the default severities.

4.4.4.4.4 Suppression Interval

The Suppression Interval is the minimum time between consecutive transmissions of the same trap. This parameter can be used to prevent excessive retransmissions of the same trap. The Suppression Interval menu enables viewing a list of all traps with Suppression Interval that differs from the default suppression interval, updating the Suppression Interval of a selected trap and restoring the Suppression Intervals of all traps to the default value of 0 (no suppression).

The Severity menu includes the following options:

- **Show Traps with Modified Suppression Interval:** Displays all traps with Suppression Interval that differs from the default suppression interval, which is 0 (no suppression).
- **Update:** Enables modifying the Suppression Interval of a selected trap. The available range is from 0 to 86,400 (seconds). 0 means no suppression.
- **Restore Defaults:** Enables restoring the Suppression Intervals of all traps to the default value (0).

4.4.5 Performance Monitoring

The Performance Monitoring menu enables to view and reset the μ BST Ethernet Ports and Wireless Port counters. It also enables to view or reset the Burst Error Rate counters for the downlink to a selected SU. The Performance Monitoring submenu includes the following options:

- “Ports Counters”
- “Burst Error Rate Counters”
- “Spectrum Analyzer”
- “BER Test”
- “Other Counters”

4.4.5.1 Ports Counters

The Performance Monitoring option enables to view and reset the μ BST Ethernet Ports and wireless link counters. The Performance Monitoring submenu includes the following options:

- “Management Port Counters”
- “Data & Wireless Ports Counters”

4.4.5.1.1 Management Port Counters

The Management Port option enables viewing or resetting the Management (MGMT) port counters. The information displayed for each counter is the

accumulated number since the last time the counters were reset. The counters are reset each time the μ BST is reset, or upon activating the Reset Counters option.

The Management Port counters include:

- Packets Received
- Packets Discarded on Rx
- Packets Transmitted
- Packets Discarded on Tx

4.4.5.1.2 Data & Wireless Ports Counters

The Data & Wireless Ports option enables viewing or resetting the counters of the Data (DATA) and wireless link ports. The information displayed for each counter is the accumulated number since the last time the counters were reset. The counters are reset each time the μ BST is reset, or upon activating the Reset Counters option.

The Data & wireless Ports counters include:

■ Data Port Counters

- » **Total Bytes received:** The total number of bytes received from the Data port, including Management frames. Frames with errors are not included.
- » **Data Bytes Received:** The total number of data bytes received from the Data port. Management frames and frames with errors are not included.
- » **Data Bytes Discarded on Rx:** The number of bytes in packets discarded due to internal communication errors.
- » **Total Bytes Transmitted:** The total number of bytes transmitted to the Data port, including Management frames. Frames with errors are not included.
- » **Data Bytes Transmitted:** The total number of data bytes transmitted to the Data port. Management frames and frames with errors are not included.
- » **Data Bytes Discarded on Tx:** This count is always 0 (No discards).

■ Wireless Port Counters

- » **Data Bytes Received:** The total number of data bytes received from the Wireless link. MAC management frames and frames with errors are not included.
- » **Data Bytes Discarded on Rx:** The number of bytes in packets received from the Wireless link and discarded due to MAC protocol receive errors, such as duplicate sequence number, wrong sequence number etc. (not CRC errors).
- » **Data Bytes Transmitted:** The total number of data bytes transmitted to the Wireless link. MAC Management frames and frames with errors are not included.
- » **Data Bytes Discarded on Tx:** The number of bytes in packets discarded due to congestion in the wireless medium.
- » **ARQ Enabled Bytes Transmitted:** The number of bytes transmitted over BE and NRT connections. Applicable only if the ARQ mechanism is enabled.
- » **Bytes Retransmitted:** The number of unacknowledged bytes that were retransmitted. Retransmissions are applicable only to BE and NRT connections provided the ARQ mechanism is enabled.
- » **Retransmission Rate (%):** Retransmission Rate in percents is defined as:
$$100 * (\text{Bytes Retransmitted}) / (\text{ARQ Enabled Bytes Transmitted})$$

4.4.5.2 Burst Error Rate Counters

The Burst Error rate Counters option enables selecting a specific SU by its MAC address for viewing or resetting the Burst Error Rate counters for the applicable downlink. The information displayed for each rate in the uplink is the accumulated number since the last time the counters were reset. The downlink counters can be viewed in the applicable SU menu. For each rate the displayed information (for the uplink) includes:

- Total Burst
- Error Bursts
- Error Rate

The counters are reset each time the μ BST is reset, or upon activating the Reset option.

4.4.5.3 Spectrum Analyzer

The Spectrum Analyzer option enables initiating a spectrum analysis test on selected frequencies, terminating an active test and viewing the results of the last test.



NOTE

During the test, the AU switches to receive mode and all SUs previously served by it are disconnected

Using the parameters defined for the test, the AU scans the selected central frequencies. At each frequency it measures the RSSI for each of the applicable sub-carrier frequencies, and calculates the median RSSI (for all sub-carriers), the frequency of the sub-carrier with the highest RSSI (Max Hold Frequency) and the highest RSSI (Max Hold RSSI). To ensure that the measured values are not affected from transmissions of other AUs in the same network, the measurements are performed only in the time periods allocated for uplink transmissions.

The Spectrum Analyzer menu includes the following options:

- Start Test
- Stop Test
- Show Test Parameters and Results

4.4.5.3.1 Start Test

The Start Test menu enables defining the test parameters. After properly completing the definition of test parameters the test is initiated automatically. The configurable test parameters are:

4.4.5.3.1.1 Channel ID

The ID (1-4) of the channel to be tested. Must be an enabled channel.

4.4.5.3.1.2 Start Frequency

The first frequency (in MHZ) participating in the test. Must be in the range supported by the ODU connected to the channel.

4.4.5.3.1.3 End Frequency

The highest frequency (in MHz) that may participate in the test (the actual highest frequency depends on the defined Start Frequency and Scanning step). Must be in the range supported by the ODU connected to the channel.

4.4.5.3.1.4 Scanning Step

The scanning step size. The available options are:

- 1 - 1.75 MHz
- 2 - 3.5 MHz
- 3 - 7.0 MHz

The scanned frequencies are defined by Start Frequency + N*Scanning Step where N is 0, 1, 2...and the scanned frequency is lower than or equal to the End Frequency.

4.4.5.3.1.5 Scanning Time

The test duration in seconds at each of the scanned frequencies.

The available range is from 1 to 30 seconds, and the default is 10 seconds.

The test will start automatically after configuring the Scanning Time.

4.4.5.3.2 Stop Test

Select this option to abort a currently active test.

4.4.5.3.3 Show Test Parameters and Results

Select this option to view the last (if any) test parameters and results. The displayed information includes:

- **Test Status:** Test Active (ongoing), Test Inactive (aborted before completion), Test Finished (completed successfully).
- **Channel ID**
- **Start Frequency (MHz)**
- **End Frequency (MHz)**
- **Scanning Step (MHz)**
- **Scanning Time (sec)**

- **Number of Scanned Frequencies:** The number of frequencies that were scanned before completing or aborting the test. Not applicable for an Active test.

For each of the scanned frequencies, the following details will be displayed:

- **Frequency # (1, 2...) (MHz)**
- **Median RSSI (dBm)**
- **Max Hold Frequency (Hz)**
- **Max Hold RSSI (dBm)**

4.4.5.4 BER Test

The BER Test sub-menu enables to initiate a BER test on the link with a specific SU, including definition of test parameters, to terminate a test and to view test results. The BER test is designed to operate in the background with no or minimal effect on active services. It includes the following options:

- “Start Test”
- “Stop Test”
- “Show Test Parameters and Results”

4.4.5.4.1 Start Test

Select this option to define the parameters for a Bit Error Rate test and to initiate a test. The test will be initiated after all parameters have been configured. The parameters are:

4.4.5.4.1.1 SU MAC Address

The BER test is performed on a link with a specific SU. This is the MAC address of the applicable SU.

4.4.5.4.1.2 Number of Repetitions

The number of test repetitions. The range is from 1 to 1000.

4.4.5.4.1.3 Number of Bytes

The number of BER test bytes to be transmitted at each test cycle. The available range is from 1,000 to 2,000,000 Bytes.

4.4.5.4.1.4 Test Priority

The service priority of the BER test. Services with higher priority will not be affected by the test. The available options are RT (Real time), NRT (Non Real Time), and BE (Best Effort).

4.4.5.4.1.5 Rate

The rates to be used for the BER test in the uplink and downlink.

The available options are BPSK 1/2, BPSK 3/4, QPSK 1/2, QPSK 3/4, QAM16 1/2, QAM16 3/4, QAM64 2/3, QAM64 3/4

4.4.5.4.2 Stop Test

Select this option to terminate a currently running BER test.

4.4.5.4.3 Show Test Parameters and Results

Select this option to see the parameters of the last BER test and the results. The displayed results include the measured BER in the uplink and downlink.

4.4.5.5 Other Counters

The Other Counters option enables viewing or resetting the DHCP Option 82 related counters. The following counters can be viewed (meaningful only when DHCP Option 82 is used):

- Packets discarded with invalid MTU: Packet received from an SU that were discarded because their size (after adding the DHCP option 82 related information) will exceed the maximum size supported by the NPU (1550 Bytes including CRC VLAN).
- Packets discarded with option 82 present: Packets received from an SU that were discarded because they include DHCP option 82 information.

4.4.6 Licenses

The License feature enables managing the license(s) granted to CPEs with limited capabilities (“L model” CPEs) as well as the general Base Station licenses. In an “L model” CPE, the overall throughput (the aggregate downlink and uplink MIR in all services allocated to subscribers behind the CPE) is limited to 2 Mbps. The Network Service Provider may purchase from Alvarion a bank of CPE unlimited bandwidth licenses, and allocate licenses to selected L model CPEs on a need basis (refer to [Section 4.8.5.3.9](#) for details on assigning a license to a selected CPE). In addition, the basic Micro Base Station with SW version 2.5 or higher is supplied with the capability to support a maximum of 20 CPEs. The Network

Service Provider may purchase licenses that will enable supporting a higher number of CPEs: 50, 150 or 250.

**NOTE**

The Number of CPEs licenses of the Micro Base Station are accumulative: To support 250 CPEs, it is needed to install first a license for 50 CPEs, followed by a license for 150 CPEs and then a license for 250 CPEs.

The various licenses (CPEs Unlimited Bandwidth Licenses Bank and Number of Supported CPEs License) are supplied as files to be loaded to the Micro Base Station using TFTP. A license file can be loaded only to the Micro Base Station specified in the applicable order.

The Licenses menu enables viewing the current status of CPEs and Base Station Licenses. The available options are:

- Show CPEs License Bank Status
- Show Base Station Licenses
- Show Temporary Grace Licenses
- Show Grace Licenses

4.4.6.1 Show CPEs License Bank Status

Select this option to view the current status of the CPEs Licenses Bank (if available). The displayed information includes:

- **License ID:** The relevant license type. In the current version only a BW (Band-Width) license type is available.
- **License Value:** The specific details of the relevant licenses. In the current version all BW licenses are Unlimited.
- **License Count:** The number of currently available licenses (balance). Each time a license is granted to a specific CPE, the License Count is decremented by one.

4.4.6.2 Show Base Station Licenses

Select this option to view the current Base Station Licenses (if applicable). The displayed information includes the License ID and License Value for each

applicable license. The currently applicable license that may be available is the Number of CPEs (License ID = CPE, License Value = 50, 150, 250).



NOTE

A License Value of “Grace” for Number of CPEs license (License ID = CPE), indicates that the number of CPEs served by a Micro Base Station with no CPE license has exceeded 20. A message indicating this event is displayed, and a corresponding trap is sent. A grace period of 30 days is granted to the Micro Base Station, starting with the registration of the 21st CPE. During this grace period it can serve more 20 CPEs. When the grace period expires, the unit will be able to serve a maximum of 20 CPEs, and will reject any additional CPE that will try to associate with it.

4.4.6.3 Show Temporary Grace Licenses and Show Grace Licenses

The aggregate uplink and downlink MIR in all the services allocated to an L model CPE should not exceed 2 Mbps. If the aggregate MIR in the services assigned to such a CPE exceeds this limit, the Network Service Provider has a 30 days grace period. During the grace period the assigned services are provided to the CPE. At any time during the 30 days grace period the Network Service Operator can load to the CPE the required permanent license for unlimited bandwidth. If a license was not loaded during this grace period, the following will happen:

- During the first 3 days, defined as a temporary grace period, the Network Service Provider may change the services assigned to the CPE so that the aggregate MIR is no longer above 2 Mbps. The CPE will be removed from the list of Temporary Grace Licenses and will return to its previous status.
- After the 3 days temporary grace period, the CPE is moved to the Grace Licenses list. After expiry of the full 30 days grace period, the CPE is moved to a list of “Grace Period Expired” CPEs (even if during the grace period the services assigned to them were changed so that the aggregate MIR is no longer above 2 Mbps). A CPE that was moved to the Grace Period Expired list will remain in this list for 3 months. A CPE that is included in this list cannot be granted another grace period. Any attempt to assign to it a service that will bring the aggregate MIR to a value above 2 Mbps will be rejected.

The Show Temporary Grace Licenses displays a table that includes the MAC addresses of CPEs that are currently included in the Temporary Grace License list. For each CPE the displayed list includes also the License ID (only BW license is applicable in the current version) and the expiration date of the temporary grace period.

The Show Grace Licenses displays a table that includes the MAC addresses of CPEs that are currently included in the Grace License list. For each CPE the displayed list includes also the License ID (only BW license is applicable in the current version) and the expiry date of the temporary grace period.

4.5 Radio Cluster Menu

Radio Cluster is a logical entity used to describe and support management of the μ BST's elements associated with specific geographical sectors. A Radio Cluster represents one or several ODUs that serve (through their directional antennas) the same geographical sector. Up to four Radio Clusters can be defined per μ BST.

The Radio Cluster(s) must be defined prior to defining the relevant ODU(s) and Access Parameters, including the Channel(s).

The Radio Cluster menu includes the following options:

- Show Summary
- Select
- Add

4.5.1 Show Summary

Select this option to view the current status of all defined Radio Clusters.

For each defined Radio Cluster, the display includes the following information:

- **ID:** Radio Cluster ID (1-2)
- **Name:** The string that is used as the descriptive name of the Radio Cluster.
- **Location:** The string that is used as the descriptive location of the Radio Cluster.
- **Sector Heading:** The direction (angle from the north) of the geographical sector.
- **Sector Beam Width:** The beam width of the antenna(s) used in the geographical sector.

4.5.2 Select

Use this option and select an already defined Radio Cluster to open the Radio Cluster # menu that will enable managing and configuring the selected Radio Cluster.

The selected Radio Cluster # menu includes the following options:

- **Show:** Select this option to view the current values defined for the selected Radio Cluster's parameters.
- **Update:** Select this option to update one or more of the selected Radio Cluster's parameters. For details on the configurable parameters Refer to [Section 4.5.4](#).
- **Delete:** Select this option to delete the selected Radio Cluster from the database.

4.5.3 Add

Select this option to define a new Radio Cluster. For details on the configurable parameters refer to [Section 4.5.4](#).

4.5.4 Radio Cluster Parameters

4.5.4.1 Radio Cluster ID

A number used to identify the Radio Cluster. The Radio Cluster ID is configurable only when adding a new Radio Cluster.

The available values range from 1 to 4.

4.5.4.2 Name

A string of up to 32 printable characters used as the descriptive name of the Radio Cluster. This is an optional descriptive parameter.

The default is an empty string.

4.5.4.3 Location

A string of up to 255 printable characters used to describe the location of the Radio Cluster. This is an optional descriptive parameter.

The default is an empty string.

4.5.4.4 Sector Heading

The direction of the geographical sector, defined in degrees from the north. This is an optional descriptive parameter.

The values range is from 0 to 359 (degrees from north).

The default value is 0 (degrees from north).

4.5.4.5 Sector Beam Width

The beam width, in degrees, of the antenna(s) used in the geographical sector. This is an optional descriptive parameter.

The values range is from 0 to 359 (degrees).

The default value is 90 (degrees).

4.6 ODU Menu

The ODU(s) must be defined prior to defining the relevant Access Parameters, including the Channel(s).

The ODU menu includes the following options:

- Show Summary
- Select
- Add

4.6.1 Show Summary

Select this option to view the current status of all defined ODUs.

For each defined ODU, the display includes the following information:

- **ID:** ODU ID (1-4)
- **Associated Radio Cluster:** The ID (1-4) defined for the associated Radio Cluster.
- **Tx Power:** The defined Tx Power in dBm units.
- **ODU Configured Band:** The radio band configured for the ODU.
- **Admin Status:** Enabled or Disabled.

For details on the parameters refer to [Section 4.6.4](#).

Upon first power-up of the μ BST, one ODU is defined automatically, with ODU ID 1. The parameters of this automatically created ODU are:

- Associated Radio Cluster: NA
- Tx Power: 28 dBm
- ODU Configured Band: Not Defined
- Admin Status: Enabled

4.6.2 Select

Use this option and select an already defined ODU to open the ODU # menu that will enable managing and configuring the selected ODU.

The selected ODU # menu includes the following options:

4.6.2.1 Show

Select this option to view the current value/selected option of applicable parameters. In addition, some general status information is displayed, as follows:

- ID
- Associated Radio Cluster
- Tx Power
- ODU Configured Band
- Admin Status
- Oper Status
- HC08 Version
- CPLD Version
- Serial Number
- Temperature (Celsius)
- HW Revision
- HW Configuration Description
- Max Tx Power: The maximum Tx Power supported by the ODU. This read-only parameter sets the upper limit for the Tx Power parameter.

4.6.2.2 Update

Select this option to update one or more of the selected ODU's parameters. For details on the configurable parameters refer to [Section 4.6.4](#).

4.6.2.3 Delete

Select this option to delete the selected ODU from the database.

4.6.3 Add

Select this option to define a new ODU. For details on the configurable parameters refer to [Section 4.6.4](#).

4.6.4 ODU Parameters

4.6.4.1 ODU ID

A number used to identify the ODU. The ODU ID is configurable only when adding a new ODU.

The available values range from 1 to 4.

4.6.4.2 Associated Radio Cluster

The ID of the associated Radio Cluster.

The available values range from 1 to 4. The value must be that of an already defined Radio Cluster.

4.6.4.3 Configured ODU Frequency Band

The Configured ODU Frequency Band will be modified through the use of Frequency Bands Configuration file (see [Section 4.6.5](#)).

The available values are the list numbers from the displayed list of available Frequency Bands.

The Configured ODU Frequency Band can be updated only if the ODU is not associated with any Channel, or if the Admin Status of the associated Channel is Disabled.

Compatibility between the Configured ODU Frequency Band and its actual band is verified by the μ BST upon trying to associate the ODU with a Channel. If the Configured ODU Frequency Band differs from the actual band supported by the ODU, a mismatch trap will be sent by the μ BST upon trying to associate it with a Channel and the association will be rejected.

4.6.4.4 Tx Power

The Tx Power parameter defines the power level of the transmitted signal at the antenna port of the ODU.

The range is from 13 to 50 dBm using a 0.25 dBm resolution. If the entered value is not compatible with the installed ODU, a trap will be issued. If the entered value is below the minimum supported by the ODU the actual power will be set to the minimum supported by the unit (18 dBm for a 3.6 GHz ODU, 24 dBm for a High Power ODU). If the entered value is above the maximum supported by the ODU, the power will be changed to the maximum value supported by the ODU (28 dBm for a regular ODU, 34 dBm for a High Power ODU).

The default is 28 dBm.

4.6.4.5 Admin Status

The transmit on/off status of the ODU.

The default option is Disabled.

4.6.5 Frequency Bands File and Frequency Bands Groups

The Frequency Bands Configuration file defines the characteristics of each of the frequency bands supported by the system. These characteristics include:

- Lowest Downlink Frequency
- Highest Downlink Frequency
- Step (resolution)
- Duplex Separation: the difference between downlink (Tx) and uplink (Rx) frequencies.
- Group ID: For certain bands, the relevant SU may use a frequency band that includes more than one of the discrete bands available for the ODU. The Group ID defines the Frequency Bands Group, which includes frequency bands that can be used by SUs served by the ODU using the selected band. The Frequency Bands Group defines also the range of frequencies that can be used by the μ BST.

In the current release, the following Frequency Bands are supported:

Table 4-3: Frequency Bands

Frequency Band	Group (ID)	Downlink Frequency Range	Duplex Separation
3.3e	3.3GHz (2)	3316-3335 MHz	50 MHz
3.3f	3.3GHz (2)	3331-3350 MHz	50 MHz
3.3g	3.3GHz g (3)	3376-3400 MHz	-76 MHz
3.5a	3.5GHz (1)	3499.5-3553.5 MHz	-100 MHz
3.5b	3.5GHz (1)	3550-3600 MHz	-100 MHz
3.6a	3.6GHz (4)	3700-3753.5 MHz	-100 MHz
3.6b	3.6GHz (4)	3746.5-3800 MHz	-100 MHz

Note that the Frequency Bands File may include additional Frequency Bands for systems that support TDD Duplex Mode or for future/other FDD systems that are not applicable to the current release.

This mechanism allows adding new frequency bands without modifying the software by simply loading a new Frequency Bands File when the supporting hardware becomes available. The file will be either a part of the μ BST's software or loaded later to the μ BST, using an updated file obtained from Alvarion. The version of the current file and information on the supported bands is available in the μ BST's Show menu.

4.7 Access Parameters Menu

The Access Parameters menu enables viewing and updating the MAC, Phy, Multirate and other parameters that affect the wireless link parameters. It is important to note that changes to some parameters take effect only after reset. For these parameters, the applicable Show menus display the Current as well as the Configured value.

The Configuration menu includes the following options:

- MAC
- Phy
- Multi Channel
- Multirate
- Voice Parameters

4.7.1 MAC Parameters

The MAC menu enables viewing/updating the following parameters:

4.7.1.1 Base Station ID Parameters

The Operator ID, Cell ID and Sector ID constitute together the Base Station ID, which is the unique identifier of the μ BST. An SU can be authenticated by the μ BST only if its defined parameters match the Base Station ID configured for the μ BST.

The Operator ID and Cell ID are defined in the Micro Base Station menu (see General Parameters, [Section 4.4.3.1.5](#)). In the MAC Parameters menu they are available only in the Show option.

The Sector ID parameter consists of three digits in the range of 0 to 255.

The default Sector ID is 0. Changes in Sector ID are applied only after reset.

4.7.1.2 ARQ Enable/Disable

The ARQ Enable/Disable parameter controls whether to use an ARQ algorithm for detecting errors and requesting retransmissions of applicable unicast messages. The ARQ mechanism is applicable only for Best Effort and Non Real Time services.

The enhanced ARQ mechanism utilized in the system minimizes packet loss over the wireless medium. Errors caused over the radio channel cannot be prevented, especially, when multi-rate algorithms take place to achieve maximum sector capacity on behalf of certain amount of errors.

When ARQ is enabled, packets in the transmit queue will be accumulated into blocks that the receiving side will have to acknowledge. The transmitter will decide on retransmission of unacknowledge blocks. In order to reduce performance penalty the enhanced ARQ mechanism uses selective acknowledgement by providing accumulated ACKs on a batch of several blocks. Retransmission is requested only for blocks that did not reach their destination. This increases slightly the overhead of the traffic when no errors are presented, but in cases where the retransmission rate is high, it is preventing unnecessary retransmissions, thus reducing the overhead that the ARQ mechanism may create.

The default is Disable.

4.7.1.3 Maximum Cell Radius

The Maximum Cell Radius is used to adapt various timing parameters of the MAC to the time it takes a message to reach its destination. This time delay is dependent upon the distance between the originating and receiving units. The timing parameters should be adapted to the largest expected delay, which is determined from the distance from the μ BST of the farthest SU served by it.



NOTE

For Non-Line-Of-Sight (NLOS) links using refractions, the cell distance should be higher than the line-of-sight distance. Typically a 30% margin is a good estimate for the increase in distance due to the NLOS operation.

Note that an SU located at a distance larger than the Maximum Cell Radius will be rejected during the network entry process.

The values range for the Maximum Cell Radius parameter is from 10 to 110 km for a bandwidth of 1.75/3.5 MHz, and 5 to 65 km for a bandwidth of 7 MHz, using a resolution of 1 km.

The default is 20 km.

If a change in the configured Bandwidth has not been applied yet, the configured Maximum Cell Radius may be below the minimum or above the maximum allowed for the new bandwidth. In such cases, the **Actual Maximum Cell Radius** parameter (available in applicable Show menus) indicates the corrected value.

**NOTE**

The basic time element (symbol) used by the system is 68 microseconds for a bandwidth of 1.75 MHz or 3.5 MHz, and 40 microseconds for a bandwidth of 7 MHz. For a bandwidth of 1.75 MHz or 3.5 MHz, this symbol size is translated to a round trip delay of approximately 20 km, or a minimum cell radius of 10 km. For 7 MHz bandwidth, this symbol size is translated to a round trip delay of approximately 12 km, or a minimum cell radius of 6 km.

The actual value that the system will use is a multiple of the one-way delay for a single basic time element: $N \times 10$ km for a bandwidth of 1.75/3.5 MHz or $N \times 6$ km for a bandwidth of 7 MHz, where N is an integer. The value configured for the Maximum Cell Radius will be up-rounded to the nearest applicable value.

4.7.2 Phy Parameters

The Phy menu enables viewing/updating the Bandwidth parameter:

4.7.2.1 Bandwidth

The frequency bandwidth used by the radio. A change in the Bandwidth parameter will take effect only after resetting the μ BST.

The Admin Status of all Channels belonging to the μ BST must be disabled to enable a configuration change in the Bandwidth parameter.

The available options are 1.75 MHz, 3.5 MHz and 7 MHz. A bandwidth of 7 MHz is supported only by a Four Channels unit.

The default is 3.5 MHz.

4.7.3 Multi Channel Parameters

Each μ BST can include up to 4 Channels with Channel IDs from 1 to 4, corresponding to up to 4 ODU connectors. In the Two-Channels unit only two channels are available (ODU 1 and ODU 2 connectors). In the Four-Channels unit 4 ODU connectors are available, but currently only ODU 1 and ODU 2 are used. Each available channel can be connected to an ODU. The Multi Channel menu includes the following options:

- Show Summary
- Diversity Mode
- Select

Following is a description of these options:

4.7.3.1 Show Summary

Select this option to view the following information for each Channel:

- Channel (1-4)
- Associated ODU
- Downlink (Tx) Frequency (MHz)
- Uplink (Rx) Frequency (MHz): Applicable only to Channels associated with a defined ODU. Computed using the rules defined in the Frequency Bands Configuration File.
- Admin Status (Enabled/Disabled)
- Configured Tx Power: Applicable only to Channels associated with a defined ODU. The Tx Power in dBm configured in the ODU.
- Associated Radio Cluster: The Associated Radio Cluster defined in the ODU.

Upon first power-up of the μ BST, the channels are defined automatically, as follows:

- Associated ODU: Channel 1 is automatically associated with ODU 1. For all other Channels (2-4) the Associated ODU is NA.
- Downlink (Tx) Frequency (MHz): 3551.750
- Admin Status: Enabled for Channel 1, Disabled for all other Channels (2-4)

4.7.3.2 Diversity Mode

The Diversity Mode of the μ BST.

The available options are:

- 1 - No Diversity
- 2 - Second Order Diversity
- 3 - Rx Diversity

In No Diversity mode each channel serves a different sector, using a different frequency. Second Order Diversity, intended primarily for Non Line Of Sight

(NLOS) deployments, use time and space diversity scheme in the downlink and ODU selection based on SNR in the uplink. Rx Diversity may provide better performance in certain deployments with both NLOS and LOS, and it uses only SNR-based selection in the uplink. In Rx Diversity the ODU connected to Channel 2 operates in receive only mode (the transmitter is switched off).

The default is No Diversity.



NOTE

A change in the Diversity Mode parameter takes effect immediately: It automatically resets the μ BST and disables the Admin Status of all its channels.

4.7.3.3 Select

Use this option to select a Channel ID (1-4) to open the Channel # menu for viewing/updating the Channel's parameters or viewing details on SUs associated to the channel. The configurable Channel parameters are:

- **Associated ODU:** An ODU ID (1-4) of an already defined ODU.
- **Downlink (Tx) Frequency (MHz):** The Tx frequency in MHz, which must be in accordance with the selected Bandwidth (see [Section 4.7.2.1](#)) and the rules defined in the Frequency Bands File for the frequency band selected as the Configured ODU Frequency Band of the associated ODU (see [Section 4.6.4.3](#)). The help text (displayed upon clicking the Tab key) reflects the limitations imposed by these rules.

In addition, the following rules must be followed in No Diversity mode if more than one channel is used:

- 1 After configuring the Downlink Frequencies f1 for one of the Channels, the Downlink Frequencies for other Channels should be configured using increments of +/- 0.875 MHz from the defined frequency: $f1 +/- (N * 0.875)$.
 - 2 The Downlink Frequencies of all Channels should belong to the same Frequency Bands Group (see [Section 4.6.5](#)).
- **Admin Status:** The Admin Status must be disabled to enable changes in the Configured ODU Frequency Band of an associated ODU. If the Configured ODU Frequency Band differs from the actual band supported by the ODU, a mismatch trap will be sent by the μ BST upon trying to associate it with a Channel and the association will be rejected.

The Admin Status of all Channels must be disabled to enable a configuration change in the Bandwidth parameter.

If the Diversity Mode is set to Second Order Diversity or Rx Diversity, the Downlink (Tx) Frequency and Admin Status of Channel 2 are not configurable: they are set automatically to the same values configured for Channel 1. In Second Order Diversity the Tx Power of the ODU associated with Channel 2 will be forced to the value configured for the ODU associated with Channel 1.

The **Show** menu includes also the following read-only parameters:

- **Tx Power:** As configured in the Associated ODU.
- **Associated Radio Cluster:** As configured in the Associated ODU.
- **Uplink (Rx) Frequency:** Computed from the configured Downlink (Tx) Frequency according to the Duplex Separation of the applicable Frequency Band.
- **ODU Frequency Band:** The Configured ODU Frequency Band. If there is a mismatch between the Configured ODU Frequency Band and its actual band, both values will be displayed.
- **Operational Status**

The **Show Associated SUs** option enables viewing details on the SUs associated to the channel. In No Diversity mode, where a different frequency is used by each channel, the association details are based on the frequency used by each SU. In Diversity modes where the same frequency is used by two channels, the SUs will be listed as associated to the first channel (channel 1).

The displayed details for each associated SU includes its MAC Address and SU Name. In addition, the total number of SUs associated to the channel is displayed.

4.7.4 Multirate Parameters

BreezeMAX employs a multirate algorithm to dynamically adapt the modulation scheme and Forward Error Correction (FEC) coding to actual link conditions. The algorithm is managed by the μ BST taking into account also information received from the served SUs. Optimal values are calculated separately for the uplink and downlink for each SU. MAP messages transmitted to the SUs include information on the uplink rate that should be used by each SU for its next transmission.

The Basic Rate is the minimum rate to be used by the Multirate algorithm. This is also the rate to be used for downlink broadcasts and multicasts. Broadcasts and multicasts messages are not acknowledged, so that the ARQ mechanism cannot be used and there is no way to guarantee that all intended recipients will receive them properly. In addition, multicasts and broadcasts are sent to multiple recipients with different link qualities. Therefore, it is preferable to use a relatively low rate for these transmissions, thus reducing the probability of errors and increasing the likelihood that all intended recipients will receive them properly.

In the uplink, this is the rate to be used by SUs for non-scheduled transmissions, such as during the contention period.

The Basic Rate is also the initial rate to be used by the algorithm for each new SU that joins the cell when the Multirate algorithm is enabled.

When the Multirate algorithm is disabled, communication with connected SUs will continue using the last uplink and downlink rates selected by the Multirate algorithm. The Set Rates option in the SU (see [Section 4.8.5.3.4.2](#)), which becomes available only when the Multirate algorithm is disabled in the AU, enables setting the Uplink Current Rate and the Downlink Current Rate to any of the values listed in [Table 4-4](#).

The multirate algorithm chooses dynamically between 8 rates. These are also the rates that can be configured for the Basic Rate parameters.

Table 4-4: Rates (Modulation Schemes and Coding)

No.	Rate
1	BPSK 1/2
2	BPSK 3/4
3	QPSK 1/2
4	QPSK 3/4
5	QAM16 1/2
6	QAM16 3/4
7	QAM64 2/3
8	QAM64 3/4

The Multirate menu enables viewing/updating the following parameters:

4.7.4.1 Multirate Enable/Disable

The Multirate Enable/Disable parameter controls whether the multirate algorithm should be used to determine current optimal rates in both the uplinks and the downlinks.

The default is Enable.



NOTE

The multirate algorithm should always be enabled. The option to disable it is available to enable using a fixed rate to support certain tests. After each reset, the μ BST boots with the multirate enabled, disregarding its status before the device was reset.

4.7.4.2 Uplink Basic Rate

The Basic Rate for all uplinks.

The available options are listed in [Table 4-4](#).

The default rate is the lowest rate BPSK 1/2 (rate 1).

4.7.4.3 Downlink Basic Rate

The Basic Rate for all downlinks.

The available options are listed in [Table 4-4](#).

The default rate is the lowest rate BPSK 1/2 (rate 1).

4.7.5 Voice Parameters

The Voice Parameters option includes a single parameter, Maximum Number of Voice Calls:

4.7.5.1 Maximum Number of Voice Calls

This parameter sets the upper limit of simultaneous voice calls that will be supported by the μ BST. Applicable for DRAP-based and Managed VoIP calls.

The range is from 0 to 50 Voice Calls.

The default is 50.

4.8 SU Menu

The SU menu includes the following options:

- Show Summary
- SW Files in μ BST
- Select by Name
- Select by MAC Address
- Add

Following is a detailed description of these options.

4.8.1 Show Summary

Select this option to view summary information and main details for all connected and pre-configured SUs.

- For each SU, the following information is displayed:
 - » MAC Address
 - » SU Name
 - » SU Type:
 - ◇ CPE
 - ◇ CPE PRO
 - ◇ CPR PRO-L
 - ◇ CPE PRO2
 - ◇ CPE PRO2-L
 - ◇ CPE SI
 - ◇ CPE SI-L
 - ◇ CPE SI2

◇ CPE-SI2-L

CPE (first generation CPE) uses a proprietary chip. CPE PRO, CPE PRO-L, CPE SI and CPE SI-L use first generation Intel's Pro/Wireless 5116 WiMAX chip. CPE PRO2, CPE PRO2-L, CPE SI2 and CPE SI2-L Dual Mode CPEs (can operate also in TDD mode) use second generation (IEEE 802.16e-ready) WiMAX Connection 2250 chip.

The "L" suffix indicates that the SU was supplied with limited capabilities (limited bandwidth).

- » SU Status (Permanent or Temporary)
- » SUID (an ID allocated to each SU by the connected μ BST)
- » Registration Status (In Service, Out Of Service)
- » Configured SW File Name: The SW File configured in the μ BST (together with the Configured Operation).
- » Configured SW Version: The SW Version of the SW File configured in the μ BST.
- » Configured Operation: The operation to be performed with the Configured SW File when the SU is connected, as well as after each reset: Null (do not load), Load (load to Shadow), Run from Shadow or Set as Main.
- » SW Download Status: The status of the last SW download operation (or None).
- » SU IDU Type: Normal (Basic Universal IDU) or an IDU Gateway using DRAP (IDU-NG-4D1W, IDU-1D1V, IDU-1D2V, SRU-FT-1D1V, SRU-FT-1D1V).
- » Number of Gateways: The total number of Gateways using DRAP (including IDU gateways) and VoIP SIP devices using Managed VoIP service connected to the SU.
- » Service Fault Status: OK or reason for denying services to the SU. The reason can be:
 - 1 Loop problem. A loop was detected on the Ethernet side of the SU. An rbNetworkingError Trap will be sent, and services to this SU will be denied until resetting the SU from the network (μ BST) side (provided the problem no longer exists). The problem is detectable through periodical (every 5 seconds)

transmissions to the Ethernet link of SNAP packets with "AA AA 03" in the header, and the destination MAC address is 00:10:E7:00:00:01. If the SU receives this packet from the Ethernet, it means that there is a loop and the SU will send an appropriate message to the μ BST.



NOTE

Another loop avoidance mechanism that is transparent to the operator is performed by the μ BST: The μ BST scans packets received from the network (DATA port) and verifies that the SRC MAC in the received packet does not match any of the addresses in the μ BST's bridging table. If there is a match it means that the source MAC address of the message received from the network side is identical to a MAC address of a device behind one of the SUs served by the μ BST. In case of a match, the μ BST discards all packets designated to the device with this MAC address, until its aging time expires.

- 2 Duplicate SU Name: The SU Name is already in use by another SU. An rbSuDuplicateName Trap will be sent and services to the SU will be denied until another unique name is configured for the SU (see also [Section 4.8.5.3.1.1](#)).

■ Summary Information

- » Total Number of SUs: The total number of SUs in the database (including connected and pre-configured SUs)
- » Total Connected SUs



NOTE

An SU that is defined as Temporary will be deleted from the database when it is disconnected.

4.8.2 SW Files in μ BST

Up to three SU SW files can be stored in the μ BST. Any of the available files can be loaded by the μ BST to a selected SU. When three SU files are stored in the μ BST, a new file cannot be added until at least one of the existing files is deleted. This menu enables viewing the current SU SW files stored in the μ BST and deleting selected file(s). It also enables defining a Default SU SW File, which is the file to be loaded to any new temporary SU when the μ BST operates in Quick Mode in order to provide it with the defined Default Service(s). Refer to [Section 4.9.1](#) for more information on Quick Mode and Default SU Profiles.

4.8.2.1 Show Files

Select this option to display the SU SW files currently stored in the μ BST. For each available SW file, the file name and the version number are displayed.

In addition, the Default SU SW File Name and Default Action are also displayed.

4.8.2.2 Default File Name

The Default File Name is the name of the SU SW file to be used for new temporary SUs when operating in Quick Mode.

4.8.2.3 Default Action

The Default Action is the action to be taken with the Default SU SW File when a new temporary SU joins the cell when operating in Quick Mode.

The available options are:

- 1 - None
- 2 - Download
- 3 - Run from Shadow
- 4 - Set as Main

4.8.2.4 Delete a File

Select this option and enter the name of an existing SU SW file to delete it from the μ BST Flash memory.

4.8.3 Select by Name

Use this option to select an SU by name to access the SU # menu that will enable managing and configuring the selected SU, viewing its performance information or deleting it from the database.

4.8.4 Select by MAC Address

Use this option to select an SU by its MAC address to access the SU # menu that will enable managing and configuring the selected SU, viewing its performance information or deleting it from the database.

4.8.5 SU # Menu

The SU # menu enables managing and configuring the selected SU. The SU # menu includes the following options:

- Show
- Unit Control

- Configuration
- Performance Monitoring
- Show MAC Addresses Behind SU
- Delete

4.8.5.1 Show

Select this option to view the current value/selected option of applicable parameters. In addition, some general status information is displayed, as follows:

- Equipment and Registration Parameters:
 - » MAC Address
 - » SU Name
 - » SU Type:
 - ◇ CPE (first generation CPE)
 - ◇ CPE PRO
 - ◇ CPR PRO-L
 - ◇ CPE PRO2
 - ◇ CPE PRO2-L
 - ◇ CPE SI
 - ◇ CPE SI-L (not applicable in current release)
 - ◇ CPE SI2
 - ◇ CPE-SI2-L (not applicable in current release)

CPE PRO, CPE PRO-L, CPE SI and CPE SI-L use first generation Intel's Pro/Wireless 5116 WiMAX chip. CPE PRO2, CPE PRO2-L, CPE SI2 and CPE SI2-L use second generation (IEEE 802.16e-ready) WiMAX chip. The "L" suffix indicates that the SU was supplied with limited capabilities (limited bandwidth).

- » Organization Name

- » Address
- » Country
- » SU Status (Permanent or Temporary)
- » SUID
- » SU IDU Type
- » Number of Gateways
- » Service Fault Status

- Configured SW Version Details
 - » Configured SW File Name
 - » Configured SW Version
 - » Configured Operation

- Current Link Quality Indicators:
 - » Uplink RSSI (dBm)
 - » Uplink SNR (dB)
 - » Uplink Current Rate
 - » Downlink RSSI (dBm)
 - » Downlink SNR (dB)
 - » Downlink Current Rate

- General HW Parameters
 - » Serial Number
 - » RF Card HW Revision
 - » Boot Version
 - » Cumulative Power On Time (hours): The cumulative power-on time of the SU since first power-up.

- » Main Card HW Revision
- » Main Card HW Configuration
- SW Versions information:
 - » Main SW File Name
 - » Main SW Version
 - » Shadow SW File Name
 - » Shadow SW Version
 - » Running From (Main or Shadow)
- MAC Parameters
 - » Base Station ID
 - » Base Station Mask
- Phy Parameters
 - » Bandwidth (MHz)
 - » Uplink (Tx) Frequency (MHz)
 - » Selected Antenna (Si CPE only)
- ATPC Parameters
 - » ATPC Support
 - » TX Power (dBm)
- Minimum Data Rates:
 - » Minimum Uplink Data Rate
 - » Minimum Downlink Data Rate
- Estimated Distance from BS (m). The accuracy is from several hundreds of meters for line-of-sight links to 1500 meters for non-line-of-sight links.

- Bridging Parameters
 - » Enable/Disable Limit on Number of Supported Devices
 - » Maximum Number of Supported Devices (if Limit on Number of Supported Devices is Enabled)
 - » Bridge Aging Time (minutes)

4.8.5.2 Unit Control

The SU Unit Control menu enables defining the SU's status, resetting the SU and managing the SW versions of the unit.

The Unit Control menu includes the following options:

- Status
- Reset
- Set Factory Defaults
- SW Version Control

4.8.5.2.1 SU Status

The SU Status parameter enables defining the status of the SU, which determines the services it can receive.

The available options are:

- 1 - Permanent
- 2 - Temporary



NOTE

An SU that is defined as Temporary will be deleted from the database when it is disconnected.

4.8.5.2.2 Reset Unit

Select this option to reset the unit. To avoid unintentional reset, you will be prompted to confirm the reset request. Changes to some of the configurable parameters are applied only after reset. Refer to [Section 4.10](#) for information on which parameters are changeable in run time and which changes are applied only after reset.

4.8.5.2.3 Set Factory Defaults

Select this option to set the SU parameters to their factory default values. Refer to [Section 4.10](#) for information on the factory default values of these parameters. The parameters will revert to their default values after the next reset.

4.8.5.2.4 SW Versions Control (only for Permanent SUs)

The SU can contain two SW versions:

- Main: Each time the SU resets it will reboot using the version defined as Main.
- Shadow: Normally the Shadow version is the backup version. Each time a new SW File is downloaded to the SU, it will be stored as a Shadow version, replacing the previous Shadow Version.

The process of upgrading to a new SW version is controlled by the μ BST, and is performed using one of the SU SW files installed in the μ BST. If the specified SU SW file does not exist in the SU, it will be downloaded to the SU and the requested operation will be executed, as described below. If it already exists in the SU, then actual loading is not necessary.

The following options are available in the SW Version Control menu:

- Show SW Versions
- None
- Download
- Run from Shadow
- Set as Main

4.8.5.2.5 Show SW Versions

Select this option to view the following information:

- SW Versions in SU:
 - » Main SW File Name
 - » Main SW Version
 - » Shadow SW File Name
 - » Shadow SW Version
 - » Running From: Main or Shadow

- Available Versions in μ BST: The available SU SW file names and the SW Version of each file.

4.8.5.2.5.1 None

Select None to cancel a pending request for another operation (an operations will be executed only after the next reset).

4.8.5.2.5.2 Download

Select this option to download a specified SW file from the μ BST to the Shadow memory of the SU.

If the specified file already exists in the SU, no action will take place.

4.8.5.2.5.3 Run from Shadow

Select this option to download a specified SW file from the μ BST to the Shadow memory of the SU, reset the SU and reboot using the Shadow version. Note that because the process is controlled by the μ BST, the SU will continue running from the Shadow version after reset.

If the specified file already exists as the Shadow version (meaning that previously a Download operation was executed for this file name), the only actual operation to take place will be to reset and run from Shadow.

If the specified file is the current Main version, no action will take place.

4.8.5.2.5.4 Set as Main

Select this option to download a specified SW file from the μ BST to the Shadow memory of the SU, reset the SU and reboot using the Shadow version, and then swap the Main and Shadow SW Version, so that the running version (which was previously the Shadow version) will become the Main version, to be used after next reset.

If the specified file already exists as the running version and it is defined as the Shadow version (meaning that previously a Download and Run from Shadow

operation was executed for this file name), the only actual operation to take place will be to swap the Main and Shadow versions. If it is already defined as the Main version, no action will take place.

4.8.5.3 Configuration

The SU Configuration menu enables viewing and updating the SU's parameters.

The Configuration menu includes the following options:

- Registration
- MAC
- Phy
- Multirate and ATPC
- Voice/Networking Gateways
- Ethernet Port
- Installer Password
- Bridging Parameters
- License

4.8.5.3.1 Registration Parameters

The SU Registration Parameters option in the μ BST Monitor enables viewing the SU's Registration parameters and updating the SU Name parameter. Other Registration parameters can be configured only locally at the SU (via the Ethernet port).

4.8.5.3.1.1 SU Name

The SU Name is typically configured locally in the SU (Common Name).

The default SU Name given to a new SU during the definition process (see [Section 4.8.6](#)) is SU@<SU's MAC Address>. When an SU is registered, it receives services based on its MAC address, and the default SU Name is replaced by the name configured in the SU (Common Name).

Under normal conditions, the SU Name should be changed only upon identifying an SU with an SU Name that is identical to that of a previously registered SU. In

this case, the new SU will be registered (to enable management), but will not receive any services. Its name in the μ BST database will be changed to SU@<SU's MAC Address>. The system administrator will be informed of the problem through the Fault Status parameter in any of the relevant Show menus (Fault Status 2) and through a trap message (rbSuDuplicateName trap). If the administrator decides that the SU is legitimate and should receive services, a new SU Name must be configured. The SU will receive services only after configuring it with a unique SU Name.

A new SU Name can be configured also for a temporary SU.

The SU Name comprises a string of up to 32 printable characters.

A change in the SU Name parameter takes effect only after reset.

4.8.5.3.1.2 Organization Name

The Organization Name configured in the SU.

4.8.5.3.1.3 Address

The Address configured in the SU.

4.8.5.3.1.4 Country

The Country name configured in the SU.

4.8.5.3.2 MAC Parameters

The Base Station ID is the identifier of the AU/ μ BST to which the SU can connect. An SU can be authenticated by an AU/ μ BST only if the Base Station ID and Base Station ID Mask configured in the SU match the Base Station ID configured for the AU/ μ BST. A change in the Base Station ID and Base Station ID Mask will take effect only after resetting the SU.

When the Best BST/AU Support is disabled and Frequency Scanning is enabled, the SU will start searching for available AUs/Micro Base Stations in the range defined by the Base Station ID and Base Station ID Mask, scanning all frequencies defined for the Frequency Scanning mechanism (see [“Radio Parameters” on page 132](#)). The SU will try to connect to the first found AU/Micro Base Station. If Frequency Scanning is disabled, the search will be performed using the Uplink (Tx) Frequency and Bandwidth parameters (see [“Radio Parameters” on page 132](#)), and the SU will try to connect to the AU/Micro Base Station it can associate with (even if more than one AU/Micro Base Station use this frequency/bandwidth the SU can associate only with the unit received with the highest SNR).

The SU MAC menu enables viewing/updating the following parameters:

4.8.5.3.2.1 Base Station ID

The Base Station ID is the identifier of the AU/ μ BST to which the SU can connect. An SU can be authenticated by an AU/ μ BST only if the Base Station ID and Base Station ID Mask configured in the SU match the Base Station ID configured for the AU/ μ BST. A change in the Base Station ID and Base Station ID Mask will take effect only after resetting the SU.

The Base Station ID consists of six groups of up to three digits each, where the range for each group is 0 to 255. The first three groups define the Operator ID, the next two groups define the Cell ID and the sixth group defines the Sector (AU) ID.

A change in the Base Station ID is applied only after reset.

4.8.5.3.2.2 Base Station ID Mask

The Base Station ID Mask, together with the Base station ID define the AU(s)/ μ BST(s) that can synchronize with the SU.

The Base Station ID Mask consists of 6 groups of up to 3 digits each, where the range of each group is 0 to 255. The first 3 groups form the mask for the Operator ID. The next 2 groups form the mask for the Cell ID, and the last group forms the mask for the Sector ID.

A change in the Base Station ID Mask is applied only after reset.



NOTE

The Base Station ID and Base Station ID Mask are identical to the BST/AU ID and BST/AU ID Mask in the Best BST/AU Parameters (see [Section 4.8.5.3.10](#)). A change in value configured for the BST/AU ID and the BST/AU ID Mask parameters in the Best BST/AU Parameters will automatically be applied also to Base Station ID and Base Station ID Mask parameters in the MAC Parameters, and vice versa.

4.8.5.3.3 Phy Parameters

The SU Phy menu enables viewing/updating the following parameters:

4.8.5.3.3.1 Bandwidth (MHz)

The frequency bandwidth used by the radio. A change in the Bandwidth parameter will take effect only after resetting the SU.

The available options are:

1 - 1.75 MHz

2 - 3.5 MHz

4 - 7 MHz (not supported by first generation SU, SU Type "CPE")

**NOTE**

Since scanning of discrete frequencies is done with all supported bandwidths (excluding first generation CPEs), the selected bandwidth may differ from the configured value. In this case the value of the current bandwidth will be forced to the value selected by the scanning mechanism.

4.8.5.3.3.2 Uplink (Tx) Frequency (MHz)

The frequency used in the uplink (from SU to the Micro Base Station). This parameter is not applicable if Frequency Scanning is enabled. A change in the Uplink Frequency parameter will take effect only after resetting the SU.

The available values depend on the Bandwidth and on the available Frequency Bands in the Frequency Bands Group supported by the Micro Base Station (see [Section 4.6.5](#)).

4.8.5.3.4 Multirate and ATPC Parameters

The Multirate and ATPC mechanism are controlled by the μ BST (except to the option to temporarily control them locally at the SU for testing purposes). The Show Multirate and ATPC Status and Parameters option enables viewing the current status of the applicable parameters. The Set Rates option can be used to set uplink and downlink rates per SU only when Multirate is disabled.

The lower the rate used by any SU, the higher is the number of symbols that should be allocated to it for transmitting/receiving a certain amount of data, resulting in reduced overall capacity of the sector. To minimize such a degrading effect on the performance of the entire sector, a Minimum Data Rate per SU can be configured. If the SU operates at a rate lower than the defined minimum, the QoS parameters of the services allocated to it will be decreased to reduce the effect on overall sector capacity. The Minimum Data Rate can be configured separately for the Downlink and Uplink, and the effect on QoS parameters is as follows:

For a Continuous Grant (CG) connection: The service will be denied as long as the SU operates in a rate that is lower than the Minimum Data Rate.

For BE, NRT and RT connections, the MIR and or CIR values will be reduced according to the formula: Corrected Value=Configured Value * (Current Rate Bytes per Symbol)/(Minimum Data Rate Bytes per Symbol), where the Bytes per Symbol for each rate are defined in the following table:

Table 4-5: Per Rate Bytes per Symbol

Rate	Modulation and Coding	Bytes per Symbol	
		BW=1.75 MHz	BW=3.5 MHz
1	BPSK 1/2	6	12

Table 4-5: Per Rate Bytes per Symbol

Rate	Modulation and Coding	Bytes per Symbol	
		BW=1.75 MHz	BW=3 .5 MHz
2	BPSK 3/4	9	18
3	QPSK 1/2	12	24
4	QPSK 3/4	18	36
5	QAM16 1/2	24	48
6	QAM16 3/4	36	72
7	QAM64 2/3	48	96
8	QAM64 3/4	54	108

4.8.5.3.4.1 Show

The Show option enables viewing the current status of the following parameters:

- Uplink RSSI (dBm)
- Uplink SNR (dB)
- Uplink Rate
- Minimum Uplink Data Rate
- Uplink Rate Below Minimum: (Yes/No)
- Downlink RSSI (dBm)
- Downlink SNR (dB)
- Downlink Rate
- Minimum Downlink Data Rate
- Downlink Rate Below Minimum: (Yes/No)
- ATPC Support
- Tx Power (dBm)

4.8.5.3.4.2 Set Rates

The Set Rates option is available only when the Multirate algorithm is disabled in the μ BST (see [Section 4.7.4](#)), allowing to set the Uplink Current Rate and the Downlink Current Rate to any of the values listed in [Table 4-4](#).

The defaults are the last rates used by the Multirate algorithm before it was disabled. For SUs that join the cell when the Multirate algorithm is disabled, the defaults are the applicable Basic Rates.

4.8.5.3.4.3 Set Minimum Data Rates

The Set Minimum Data Rates option enables viewing and updating the Minimum Uplink Data Rate and Minimum Downlink Data Rate for the SU. The default for both parameters is Rate 1 (BPSK 1/2).

4.8.5.3.5 Voice/Networking Gateways

The Voice/Networking Gateways option enables viewing details on the Voice/Networking Gateways connected to the SU. This is applicable only for Gateways supporting the DRAP protocol VoIP SIP devices using Managed VoIP services.

For each Gateway, the following details are provided:

- Gateway Type (applicable only for DRAP based gateways)
- Protocol (DRAP or Dynamic, where Dynamic indicates a SIP device using a Managed VoIP Service)
- IP Address
- VLAN ID
- Number Of Active Calls (applicable only for Voice Gateways)

The following DRAP-based gateways are currently available:

- IDU-NG-4D1W: A Networking Gateway that serves also as an SU IDU, supporting 4 data ports and 1 Wireless LAN port.
- AVG-1D1V: A stand-alone (external) Voice Gateway, supporting 1 data port and 1 POTS port.
- AVG-1D2V: A stand-alone (external) Voice Gateway, supporting 1 data port and 2 POTS ports.

- IDU-FT-1D1V: A SIP Voice Gateway with battery backup that serves also as an SU IDU, supporting 1 data port and 1 POTS port.
- IDU-FT-1D1V: A SIP Voice Gateway with battery backup that serves also as an SU IDU, supporting 1 data port and 2 POTS ports.
- SRU-FT-1D1V: A Voice Gateway that acts as a bridge between an Si CPE and the user's equipment, supporting 1 data port and 1 POTS port and providing SIP based VoIP services and a battery backup for both the SRU and the Si CPE.
- SRU-FT-1D2V: A Voice Gateway that acts as a bridge between an Si CPE and the user's equipment, supporting 1 data port and 2 POTS ports and providing SIP based VoIP services and a battery backup for both the SRU and the Si CPE.

4.8.5.3.6 Ethernet Port

The Ethernet Port menu enables configuration of the Ethernet port operation mode (speed and duplex).

4.8.5.3.6.1 Show

The Show option enables viewing the configured and actual operation modes:

- Current Ethernet Port Auto Negotiation
- Current Ethernet Port Speed and Duplex
- Configured Ethernet Port Auto Negotiation
- Configured Ethernet Port Speed and Duplex (NA if Configured Ethernet Port Auto Negotiation is set to Enable)
- Ethernet Port Link Status (Up or Down)

4.8.5.3.6.2 Update

Select the Update option to change the Ethernet Port parameters:

- **Ethernet Port Auto Negotiation:** Enable or Disable.
- **Ethernet Port Speed and Duplex:** Available only if the configured Ethernet Port Auto Negotiation is set to Disable. The available options are 10 Half, 10 Full, 100 Half and 100 Full.

4.8.5.3.7 **Installer Password**

The Installer Password option enables viewing the current Installer Password and configuring a new password. The Installer Password is used for accessing the SU's Monitor (Installer) program locally, using Telnet via the SU's Ethernet port.

The Installer Password consists of a string of up to 20 printable characters, case sensitive.

The default Installer Password is installer.

4.8.5.3.8 **Bridging Parameters**

The Bridging Parameters menu enables setting a limit on the maximum number of Ethernet devices behind the SU and configuring the aging time for devices in the SU's bridging table. The Bridging parameters are:

4.8.5.3.8.1 **Enable/Disable Limit on Number of Supported Devices**

If the Enable/Disable Limit on Number of Supported Devices parameter is set to Disable, the maximum number of supported devices is 512.

The default is Disable.

4.8.5.3.8.2 **Maximum Number of Supported Devices**

This parameter is applicable only when the Enable/Disable Limit on Number of Supported Devices parameter is set to Enable.

The available range is from 1 to 512 devices.

The default is 512.

4.8.5.3.8.3 **Bridge Aging Time**

The Bridge Aging Time sets the aging time for all addresses in the SU's Forwarding Data Base.

The available values are from 1 to 1440 minutes.

The default is 3 minutes.

4.8.5.3.9 **License**

The License menu is applicable only to L model CPE. It enables viewing the details of installed licenses and loading a new license (if a required license is available in the CPE Licenses Bank).

4.8.5.3.10 **Best BST/AU**

An SU that can communicate with more than one Micro Base Station/AU may become associated with the first BST/AU it "finds", not necessarily the best choice in terms of quality of communication. Changes in Base Station deployment and subscriber density can accumulate to create substantial changes in SU

performance. The quest for load sharing together with the desire to create best throughput conditions for the SU created the need for the Best BST/AU feature, to enable an SU to connect to the best BST/AU in its neighborhood.

When the Best BST/AU Support is enabled and Frequency Scanning is enabled, the SU scans all AUs/Micro Base Stations in a predefined range, in all frequencies defined for scanning (see [“Radio Parameters” on page 132](#)). Note that discrete frequencies are scanned in all supported bandwidths (excluding first generation CPEs). Each of the AUs/Micro Base Stations with which the SU can communicate (perform initial phase of network entry) is given a quality mark based on the quality of the signal at which it is received by the SU. At the end of the scanning period, the SU reaches a Best BST/AU decision according to the information gathered. The AU/Micro Base Station with the highest quality mark is selected as the Best BST/AU, and the SU will immediately try to associate with it at the relevant frequency/bandwidth. If Frequency Scanning is disabled, the search will be performed using the Uplink (Tx) Frequency and Bandwidth parameters (see [“Phy Parameters” on page 124](#)), and the SU will try to connect to the AU/Micro Base Station it can associate with (even if more than one AU/Micro Base Station use this frequency/bandwidth the SU can associate only with the unit received with the highest SNR).

The range used for scanning is defined by the BST/AU ID and BST/AU ID Mask parameters of the SU. The initial range can be limited by defining a preferred range of BST/AU IDs, and selecting the best BST/AU in the preferred range. If no BST/AU is found in the preferred range, the SU will scan the entire range.

The Best BST/AU Parameters menu includes the following options:

4.8.5.3.10.1 Show

The Show option enables viewing the following:

- Best BST/AU Support
- Preferred BST/AU ID
- Preferred BST/AU ID Mask
- Selected BST/AU ID
- Selected Downlink (Rx) Frequency
- BST/AU ID
- BST/AU ID Mask

- Best BST/AU Table, displaying for each BST/AU with which the SU can communicate (including the selected BST/AU) the following parameters:
 - » BST/AU ID
 - » Downlink (Rx) Frequency (MHz)
 - » SNR (dB)

4.8.5.3.10.2 Update

The Update option enables configuration of the following parameters (changes in Best BST/AU parameters take effect only after reset):

4.8.5.3.10.2.1 Best BST/AU Support

The Best BST/AU Support parameter allows enabling or disabling the Best BST/AU feature in the SU. If the Best BST/AU Support feature is disabled, the SU will start scanning in the range defined by the BST/AU ID and BST/AU ID Mask and select the first found BST/AU.

4.8.5.3.10.2.2 Preferred BST/AU ID and Preferred BST/AU ID Mask

These two parameters define the initial range for scanning in order to find the best BST/AU. The SU will select the best BST/AU within this range. If no BST/AU is found within this range, the SU will continue searching in the entire range defined by the BST/AU ID and BST/AU ID Mask parameters.

The Preferred BST/AU ID and Preferred BST/AU ID Mask consist of 6 groups of up to 3 digits each, where the range of each group is 0 to 255. The first 3 groups form the base address/mask for the Operator ID. The next 2 groups form the base address/mask for the Cell ID, and the last group forms the base address/mask for the Sector ID. The range defined by these two parameters must be within the range defined by the BST/AU ID and BST/AU ID Mask.

4.8.5.3.10.2.3 BST/AU ID and BST/AU ID Mask

These two parameters define the overall range for scanning in order to find the best AU. The SU will initially scan the range defined by the Preferred BST/AU ID and Preferred BST/AU ID Mask (if applicable). If no AU is found within this range, the SU will continue searching in the entire range defined by the BST/AU ID and BST/AU ID Mask parameters.

The BST/AU ID and BST/AU ID Mask consist of 6 groups of up to 3 digits each, where the range of each group is 0 to 255. The first 3 groups form the base address/mask for the Operator ID. The next 2 groups form the base address/mask for the Cell ID, and the last group forms the base address/mask for the Sector ID.

**NOTE**

The BST/AU ID and BST/AU ID Mask are identical to the Base Station ID and Base Station ID Mask in the MAC Parameters (see [Section 4.8.5.3.2](#)). A change in value configured for the BST/AU ID and the BST/AU ID Mask will automatically be applied also to Base Station ID and Base Station ID Mask parameters in the MAC Parameters, and vice versa.

4.8.5.3.10.3 Clear

Select this option to clear the current Best AU Table. Typically this should be done prior to initiating a full scanning process (otherwise the SU will try first the AUs that are included in the current table).

4.8.5.3.11 Radio Parameters

The Radio Parameters menu enables viewing and updated the bandwidth, frequency scanning and antenna parameters. The Radio Parameters menu includes the following options:

- Bandwidth
- Frequency Scanning
- Discrete Frequencies
- Update Scanning Table
- Force Full scanning

4.8.5.3.11.1 Bandwidth (MHz)

This option enables viewing the current Bandwidth (the Bandwidth parameter can be configured only in the Phy Parameters menu, see [Section 4.8.5.3.3.1](#)).

**NOTE**

Since scanning of discrete frequencies is done with all supported bandwidths (excluding first generation CPEs), the selected bandwidth may differ from the configured value. In this case the value of the current bandwidth will be forced to the value selected by the scanning mechanism.

4.8.5.3.11.2 Frequency Scanning

The list of frequencies that participate in the scanning process includes a set of frequencies belonging to the scanning range and/or a set of up to 10 discrete frequencies.

The scanning of frequencies belonging to the defined range (if any) is performed using the Bandwidth parameters (see [“Bandwidth \(MHz\)” on page 124](#)).

The frequencies belonging to the scanning range are defined by Start Downlink (Rx) Frequency, End Downlink (Rx) Frequency, Main Step and Intermediate Steps. The set of frequencies to be scanned is defined as follows:

The “Main Frequencies” are defined by the Start Frequency, End Frequency and Main Step, using the formula $F(N) = \text{Start Frequency} + N * \text{Main Step}$, with End Frequency as the upper limit: $F(1) = \text{Start Frequency} + \text{Main Step}$, $F(2) = \text{Start Frequency} + 2 * \text{Main Step}$

The Intermediate Steps can be used to define additional frequencies using a finer resolution. The Intermediate Steps includes a list of up to 8 entries represented by numbers from 1 to 8, or 0 (none) for no Intermediate Steps. The intermediate steps are defined as follows:

Table 4-6: Scanning Intermediate Steps

Number included	Effect on scanned frequencies set
None (0)	Only “Main Frequencies” (Start Frequency + N*Main Step) as defined above are included in the set
1	Start Frequency is added to the set of “Main Frequencies”
2	All intermediate frequencies defined by “Main Frequency” + 125 KHz are added to the scanning set
3	All intermediate frequencies defined by “Main Frequency” + 250 KHz are added to the scanning set
4	All intermediate frequencies defined by “Main Frequency” + 375 KHz are added to the scanning set
5	All intermediate frequencies defined by “Main Frequency” + 500 KHz are added to the scanning set
6	All intermediate frequencies defined by “Main Frequency” + 625 KHz are added to the scanning set
7	All intermediate frequencies defined by “Main Frequency” + 750 KHz are added to the scanning set
8	All intermediate frequencies defined by “Main Frequency” + 875 KHz are added to the scanning set

For example, the Intermediate Steps list 1,2,5 means that the scanned frequencies are: Start Frequency, Start Frequency + 125 KHz, Start Frequency + 500 KHz, Start Frequency + N*Main Step, Start Frequency + N*Main Step + 125 KHz, Start Frequency + N*Main Step + 500 KHz (N=1, 2,.... End Frequency is the upper limit for the scanned frequencies).

The Frequency Scanning menu enables viewing and updating the scanning range parameters. The Frequency Scanning menu includes the following options:

4.8.5.3.11.2.1 Show

The Show option enables viewing the following:

- Admin Status
- Start Downlink (Rx) Frequency (MHz)
- End Downlink (Rx) Frequency (MHz)
- Scanning Main Step
- Scanning Intermediate Steps (Configured)
- Scanning Intermediate Steps (Actual)

4.8.5.3.11.2.2 Update

The Update menu enables configuration of the following parameters (Excluding the Admin Status, changes in Frequency Scanning parameters take effect only after reset):

- **Admin Status:** Enables/disable the frequency scanning mechanism.
- **Start Downlink (Rx) Frequency (MHz):** The lowest frequency in the range of frequencies to be scanned. The available values depend on the frequency range defined by the Frequency Bands belonging to the applicable Frequency Bands Group (see [Section 4.6.5](#)), and the configured Bandwidth.
- **End Downlink (Rx) Frequency (MHz):** The highest frequency in the range of frequencies to be scanned. The available values depend on the frequency range defined by the Frequency Bands belonging to the applicable Frequency Bands Group (see [Section 4.6.5](#)), and the configured Bandwidth.
- **Scanning Main Step (KHz):** The Main Scanning Step, used to define the set of “Main Frequencies” as described above.

The range is from 125 KHz to 1750 KHz, in steps of 125 KHz.

- **Scanning Intermediate Steps:** The Intermediate Scanning Steps includes up to 8 entries of numbers between 1 to 8, or 0 for none, that define the intermediate frequencies to be scanned, as described above.

The highest step (in KHz) defined by the Intermediate Scanning Steps must be smaller than the Scanning Main Step.

4.8.5.3.11.3 Discrete Frequencies

The Discrete Frequencies menu enables viewing and editing the list of discrete frequencies that will be included in the Frequency Scanning Table.

In all SUs excluding first generation CPEs discrete frequencies (if any) are scanned using all supported bandwidths (1.75, 3.5, 7 MHz).

The Discrete Frequencies menu includes the following options:

- **Show:** Select this option to view the current list of discrete frequencies (if any)
- **Update List:** Enter a list of up to 10 discrete frequencies, separated by commas (no space). This list will replace the current list of discrete frequencies.
- **Add Frequency:** Enter one frequency to be added to the current list of discrete frequencies.
- **Delete Frequency:** Enter one frequency to be removed from the current list of discrete frequencies.
- **Delete All:** Select this option to delete the entire list of discrete frequencies.

4.8.5.3.11.4 Update Scanning Table

Select this option to update the frequency scanning table in run time (without resetting the unit).

4.8.5.3.11.5 Force Full Scanning

Select this option to initiate a full scanning process.

4.8.5.4 Performance Monitoring

The Performance Monitoring sub-menu provides the following options:

- Ports Counters
- Burst Error Rate Counters

4.8.5.4.1 SU Ports Counters

The SU Ports Counters menu enables viewing or resetting the Ethernet and Wireless ports counters. The information displayed for each counter is the accumulated number since the last time the counters were reset. The counters are reset each time the SU is reset, or upon activating the Reset Counters option.

The displayed counters include:

■ Ethernet Port Counters

- » **Data Bytes Received:** The total number of data bytes received from the Ethernet link. Management frames and frames with errors are not included.
- » **Data Bytes Discarded on Rx:** The number of bytes discarded when a packet received from the Ethernet port is not forwarded to the Wireless port due to bridging or classification considerations.
- » **Data Bytes Transmitted:** The total number of data bytes transmitted to the Ethernet link. Management frames and frames with errors are not included.
- » **Data Bytes Discarded on Tx:** The number of bytes discarded when a packet received from the Wireless port is not forwarded to the Ethernet port due to bridging or VLAN considerations.

■ Wireless Port Counters

- » **Data Bytes Received:** The total number of data bytes received from the Wireless link. Management frames and frames with errors are not included.
- » **Data Bytes Discarded on Rx:** The number of bytes in packets received from the Wireless link and discarded due to MAC protocol receive errors, such as duplicate sequence number, wrong sequence number etc. (not CRC errors).
- » **Data Bytes Transmitted:** The total number of data bytes transmitted to the Wireless link. MAC Management frames and frames with errors are not included.
- » **Data Bytes Discarded on Tx:** The number of bytes in packets discarded due to congestion in the wireless medium.

- » **ARQ Enabled Bytes Transmitted:** The number of bytes transmitted over BE and NRT connections. Applicable only if the ARQ mechanism in the AU is enabled.
- » **Bytes Retransmitted:** The number of unacknowledged bytes that were retransmitted. Retransmissions are applicable only to BE and NRT connections, provided the ARQ mechanism in the AU is enabled.
- » **Retransmission Rate (%):** Retransmission Rate in percents is defined as:
 $100 * (\text{Bytes Retransmitted}) / (\text{ARQ Enabled Bytes Transmitted})$.

4.8.5.4.2 Burst Error Rate Counters

Data is transmitted in bursts, as described in the following figure, where each burst includes a CRC string.

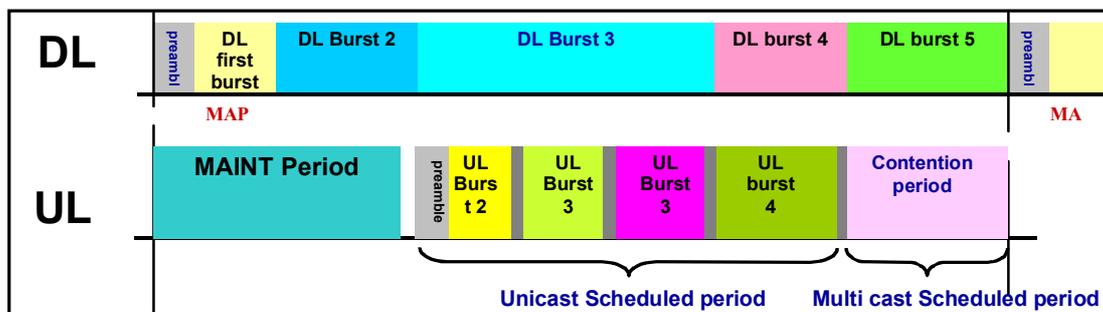


Figure 4-1: Uplink and Downlink Scheduled Transmissions

In the downlink, each burst uses a single rate and may include data intended for several SUs. In the uplink, each burst is from a different SU (also using a single rate).

The Burst Error rate Counters option enables viewing or resetting the Burst Error Rate counters. The information displayed for each rate in uplink and downlink is the accumulated number since the last time the counters were reset. For each direction (uplink/downlink) the displayed information includes the following statistics for each rate:

- Total Burst
- Error Bursts
- Error Rate

The counters are reset each time the SU is reset, or upon activating the Reset option.

4.8.5.5 Show MAC Addresses Behind SU

Select this option to view a list of the MAC Addresses of the devices behind the SU. If VLAN behind the SU is used, the VLAN ID used by each device is displayed next to its MAC Address.

4.8.5.6 Delete

This option enables deleting the selected SU from the database. Only disconnected (Out of Service) SUs can be deleted.

4.8.6 Add New SU

Select the Add New SU option to add a new SU to the database. The Add New SU sub-menu includes the following parameters:

- SU MAC Address
- SW File Name: The SW File to be used by the SU. Should be either a File Name known to exist in the SU or an SU SW File Name in the μ BST.
- Operation: The action to be performed with the specified SW File after the SU connects to the AU (None, Download, Run from Shadow or Set as Main).

A new SU that attempts to communicate with the base station when the base station operates in Advanced Mode will be registered only if its MAC address exists in the database.

4.9 Services Menu

4.9.1 Introduction to Services

4.9.1.1 Services, Subscribers and Service Profiles

A Service is a virtual connection between a Subscriber's application and the Network Resource. The Network Resource could be Internet, Content Provider, Corporate Network, etc.

The Services are implemented as IEEE 802.16 connections within the wireless domain. Each Service can include up to 4 uplink and 4 downlink connections. Implementation within the provider's backbone domain depends on the specific backbone network.

A Subscriber is an entity that may be associated with any number of devices connected to any number of SUs. Each Service associates a certain Service Profile with Subscriber's device(s) behind a specific SU.

The Service Profile's properties depend on the Service Type. All data Services have the following properties:

- **VLAN ID based Classification:** Each Service can be associated with up to 16 VLAN IDs, enabling creation of VLANs within the wireless domain and differentiation of services to different end-users behind the same SU based on VLAN ID classification.
- **Quality of Service (QoS) and Priority based Classification:** Up to 4 uplink and 4 downlink QoS profiles can be assigned to each Service. The data will be mapped onto these connections by either IEEE 802.1p or DSCP priority tags. This will lead to creation of the corresponding number of Uplink and Downlink connections supporting differentiated services to up to 4 applications based on either IEEE 802.1p or DSCP prioritization schemes. In cases where prioritization is not used, a single pair of uplink/downlink connections is created.
- **Forwarding Rules:** A Forwarding Rule is assigned to each Service, defining various features that define the handling of certain message types in the wireless domain. These features, that define the wireless broadcast domain for all Services that use the Forwarding Rule, include Unicast and Broadcast relaying, QoS Profile for Multicasts and Unknown Address Forwarding Policy. The available features depend on the Service Type.

- **Aggregation:** Several Services in the Wireless Domain may be aggregated into a single Virtual Private Link (VPL) in the backbone domain.
- **Priority Marking:** Ethernet frames transmitted to the backbone may be marked with a configurable priority (DSCP or IEEE 802.1p), enabling the upstream network to handle the traffic accordingly.
- **Auto-configuration:** The Ethernet Addresses of the Subscribers' PCs are automatically learnt just as in a standard Bridge. For each Ethernet Address it also learns the VLAN behind the SU it belongs to.

Currently, the following Service types are supported:

- L2 (layer 2) Data Service
- PPPoE Data Service
- Voice Service

4.9.1.2 Service Types

4.9.1.2.1 L2 Service

L2 (Layer 2) service transports Layer 2 (Ethernet) frames between the subscriber's site and the Network Resource located behind the provider's backbone and/or between the subscriber's sites. L2 service is transparent to the layer 3 protocol: it can also be used for PPPoE traffic, and it support DRAP-based Voice services.

4.9.1.2.2 PPPoE Service

PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet) Access service provides connectivity between a PPPoE enabled devices at the subscriber's site and a PPPoE aware Access Concentrator behind the Base Station. In a PPPoE Forwarding Rule, Unicast and Multicast Relaying are always disabled, packets with Unknown Address are always rejected. The frames are forwarded only between the Subscribers' PCs and the PPPoE Access Concentrator. Frames that are not PPPoE Ethertype are discarded.

4.9.1.2.3 Voice Service

The Voice service provides telephony services through an external Voice Gateway connected to the Subscriber Unit's data port. The Voice service is designed for Alvarion's Voice Gateways, using the proprietary DRAP signaling protocol to identify VoIP sessions and to verify optimal handling of these sessions. Upon provisioning of such a service, the system automatically handles Signaling and RTP connections establishment, including QoS issues. Appropriate connections

are established to satisfy to actual demand, according to session status and required bandwidth. In a Voice Forwarding Rule, Unicast and Multicast Relaying are always enabled, packets with Unknown Address are always forwarded.

DRAP (Dynamic Resources Allocation Protocol) is a protocol between the Gateway (installed behind the Subscriber Unit) and the base station. The protocol provides an auto-discovery mechanism for the Gateway, so that no specific configuration is needed and the Gateway can automatically locate and register with the base station. The protocol uses a few simple messages enabling a Voice Gateway to request resources when calls are made, and the base station to dynamically allocate them.

Using the DRAP solution has the following advantages:

- Maintain telephony toll quality over the wireless network - dynamically allocate Continuous Grant (CG) connections for active calls, maintaining the QoS and low jitter needed for toll-quality voice services. Bandwidth is allocated according to actual requirements of each call, taking into account the Codec's type and sampling rate being used.
- Allocate CG bandwidth only for the duration of the call - the air resources are allocated and released according to the DRAP messages, which are based on the VoIP signaling. This dynamic allocation ensures efficient use of the air resources.
- Prevent callers from placing calls if a sector is overloaded - the operator can control and limit the maximum number of concurrent calls per wireless sector and per end user voice gateway. Thus, the operator has complete control of its network and the resources in it.
- Automatic support of Codec changing in a VoIP call - the DRAP messages update the BreezeMAX equipment on any Codec change or subsequent bandwidth allocation change during the call, hence the exact required bandwidth is always provided. This is essential in fax transmissions where the call might begin with one Codec and switch to another to accommodate the fax transmission.
- VoIP stack is always in synch with the wireless transport - as the DRAP is integrated into the VoIP stack all calls are terminated according to the VoIP standard. Even if no resources are available, the voice gateway receives an appropriate message from the BreezeMAX system and sends the required signaling message according to the VoIP standard used.

4.9.1.2.4 Managed VoIP Service

The Managed VoIP service for SIP Voice Gateways uses external Application Function (AF) entity that serves as a SIP proxy and Policy Function (PF) entity that communicates with the Micro Base Station using R3 signaling protocol to provide admission control for the voice sessions. The Micro Base Station recognizes at uplink direction the first SIP packet transfer from any SIP device using a specified port (the default is port 5060) and using R3 location allocation messages indicates to the PF the IP address of any new SIP client that initiates a session. The AF will request the PF to add, remove or modify resources for a specific SIP client and the PF will translate those requests to the Base Station. Only those calls allocated with resources by the Micro Base Station will be allowed to be established and served. Those rejected due to insufficient resources will not be allocated and will be rejected by SIP signaling managed by the AF. The criteria for rejecting is based on the Maximum Number of Voice Calls parameter (this parameter serves for both Managed VoIP sessions and DRAP-based sessions).

The Managed VoIP Service allows also data connections that function like a regular L2 Service, including the ability to transport PPPoE traffic. Thus, defining only one service it is possible to send both data and VoIP traffic, with the appropriate quality of service for each kind of traffic. The data connection is used also for initial detection of SIP traffic in the uplink. Upon actual provisioning of a Managed VoIP service, the system automatically handles Signaling and RTP connections establishment, including QoS issues. Appropriate connections are established to satisfy to actual demand, according to session status and required bandwidth.

4.9.1.3 Supporting Generic (3rd Party) VoIP Services

When using VoIP devices that do not support the DRAP protocol, the required service can be provided through a Data (L2) service with a CG QoS (see [Section 4.9.4.7](#)) that is defined in accordance with the estimated bandwidth required for the service. The required bandwidth depends on several parameters, such as codec type, sample rate and T.38 Fax Relay support. The service parameters depend also on the marking features of the VoIP equipment (the ability to use either DSCP or 802.1p to distinguish between RTP, RTCP and VoIP Signaling, and Data traffic).

The system includes several pre-configured Service Profiles for commonly used VoIP applications. For details on the pre-configured profiles, refer to [Section 4.9.6](#). For details on defining Service Profiles for generic VoIP devices, refer to [Appendix](#).

4.9.1.4 Advanced and Quick Service Modes

A BreezeMAX Base Station can operate in either Advanced or Quick Mode of service provisioning.

Advanced Mode enables operators to completely deny services to SUs that are not defined in the system. This increases the security of the system but complicates slightly the installation process as an SU must be defined in the system before it can be registered and receive any service.

Quick Mode is intended primarily for scenarios where the operator is not concerned with potentially "stolen" SUs, and wishes to provide basic services also to SUs that are not yet defined in the system. It may also be used as a temporary operation mode during SUs installation phase.

In both modes, defined services are provisioned to defined SUs. The difference between the two modes is in provisioning of services to SUs that are not defined in the system.

In Advanced Mode, an undefined SU that is authenticated by the system will be added to the database of the Base station (NMS) as Temporary. The database will include also its MAC address and the configured registration parameters. No services are provided as long as the SU is defined as Temporary. To receive services, the SU must be defined in the system. When it becomes a Permanent SU, the required services can be assigned to it.

In Quick Mode, an undefined SU that is authenticated by the system will be added to the database of the Base Station (NMS) as Temporary. The subscriber will be able to use only services based on the Default Service Profile(s). It is possible to define up to two Default Service Profiles: one for PPPoE services and one for L2 or Voice or Managed VoIP service. When the SU is defined as Permanent and services are assigned to it, it will be able to use the defined default services.

When changing the status of an SU from Permanent to Temporary, the SU must be reset to perform a new network entry process for getting the correct Default Service.

4.9.1.5 Using VLANs and VPLs

VLANs can be used for creating within the BreezeMAX network virtual groups of multiple end-users (stations) belonging to the same organization (Subscriber). They may also be used to differentiate between different end-users (stations) connected to the same SU.

In the backbone, VPL ID (Virtual Private Link ID) is used. VPL is a virtual connection between two points on the network, such as a base station and a

service provider or corporate network, identified by the VPL ID, with functionality that is similar to VLAN ID (VLAN on the backbone network). Typically, it is used to separate between different traffic types (e.g. Data and Voice), or traffic to/from different ISPs or different corporate networks.

If the VPL ID is None (No VPL ID) and VLAN Transparency Mode is Off, frames arriving from the infrastructure side with a VLAN ID tag will be discarded. Tagged frames arriving from the wireless domain will be forwarded without a VLAN tag, unless 802.1p Priority Marking is used. If 802.1p Priority Marking is used, tagged frames will be forwarded with VPL ID = 0 and the defined Priority Marking Value.

If the VPL ID is other than None (applicable only if VLAN Transparency Mode is Off), all untagged frames forwarded to the network will be tagged with the VPL ID. The VLAN ID in tagged frames arriving from the wireless network will be replaced by the VPL ID.

The guidelines that should be followed when defining VPL ID are:

- Several Service Profiles may share the same VPL ID. However, the following rules must be met:
 - » Any number of L2 and/or VoIP Service Profiles may share the same VPL ID, provided they all use the same Forwarding Rule.
 - » Any number of PPPoE Service Profiles may share the same VPL ID, provided they all use the same Forwarding Rule.
 - » Any number of Managed VoIP Service Profiles may share the same VPL ID, provided they all use the same Forwarding Rule.
 - » Any number of L2, Voice, Managed VoIP and PPPoE Service Profiles may share the same VPL ID, provided that different Forwarding Rules are used for the groups of PPPoE, Managed VoIP and L2/Voice Service Profiles.

The VLAN Transparency Mode defines the method of transferring packets to the operator's upstream network. When set to On, data packets sent from the Base Station to the backbone will be transferred transparently. The VPL ID parameter is not applicable to Service Profiles with VLAN Transparency Mode On.

- For tagged packets, the VPL ID will be their VLAN tag.
- For untagged packets, the VPL ID will be None.

For packets received from the network, the forwarding decision will be according to the packet's VPL ID. If the VPL ID is unknown (either None or not included in

the list of VPL IDs defined for any of the existing, non-transparent Service Profiles), the system will assume this is a transparent VLAN packet (if at least one transparent Service is defined) and transfer it with the original VLAN tag (or untagged if there is no VLAN tag).

For transparent services, VLAN Classification Mode can be set to On to enable downlink classification based on both the MAC Address and VLAN ID, to support applications with multiple VLAN IDs per a single MAC address. All Services assigned to the same SU must be configured with the same VLAN Classification Mode (Either On or Off). If VLAN Classification Mode is On, only a single VLAN ID can be defined for the Service. This means that the allowed combinations are:

- Hybrid VLAN Mode is Off and the VLAN List includes a single VLAN ID.
- Hybrid VLAN Mode is On and the VLAN List is empty.

For transparent services it is also possible to configure an Access VLAN to be used with untagged packets received on the Ethernet port of the SU. This parameter is applicable only for a transparent service with Hybrid Mode set to On, or a transparent service with Hybrid Mode set to Off and an empty VLAN list.

A maximum of one Access VLAN can be defined per SU.

Hybrid VLAN Mode of operation enables classification of both tagged and untagged packets or untagged packets only, according to the following rules:

Table 4-7: Hybrid VLAN Mode

Hybrid VLAN Mode	VLAN List	Forwarded Packets
Off	Exists	Only packets tagged with a VLAN ID that exists in the VLAN List. VLAN List can include up to 16 entries.
	Empty	All (both untagged and tagged with any VLAN ID)
On	Exists	Untagged packets, and packets tagged with a VLAN ID that exists in the VLAN List. VLAN List can include up to 15 entries.
	Empty	Only untagged frames.

The guidelines that should be followed when defining VLAN IDs and related parameters are:

- A specific VLAN ID behind a certain SU can be associated only with a single Service of a certain Service Type. It is not possible to define two Services of the same Service Type for the same SU and VLAN ID. However, the same SU and VLAN ID can be associated with two Services of different Service Types,

provided one of them is a PPPoE Service (the combinations L2 and Voice, L2 and Managed VoIP, Voice and Managed VoIP are forbidden).

- For each Service Type, a maximum of one Service that enables forwarding of untagged packets can be assigned to an SU. Forwarding of untagged packets is supported when either Hybrid VLAN Mode is On, or Hybrid VLAN Mode is Off and the VLAN List is empty. It is not possible to define for the same SU two Services of the same Service Type that enable forwarding of untagged packets. However, the same SU and untagged packets can be associated with two Services of different Service Types, provided one of them is a PPPoE Service (the combinations L2 and Voice, L2 and Managed VoIP, Voice and Managed VoIP are forbidden).
- The maximum total number of VLAN IDs behind the same SU is 16 (15 when there is a Service with Hybrid VLAN Mode On is assigned to the SU).
- The combination of VLAN Transparency Service On, Hybrid VLAN Mode Off and an empty VLAN List means that all packets are forwarded. This combination should be used only if the Service Provider can ensure that there will not be conflicts between VLAN IDs used by devices behind the SU and existing VPL IDs.
- To avoid conflicts, a transparent Service Profile cannot be assigned to a Service if the Service's VLAN ID list includes a VLAN ID that is equal to any of the already assigned VPL IDs.
- The combination VLAN Transparency Mode On, Hybrid VLAN Mode On and an empty VLAN List means that only untagged frames should be forwarded. Such a Service cannot be assigned if there is an assigned non-transparent Service with VPL ID = None.

4.9.2 Introduction to Filtering Features

The Filtering features allow a network operator to control the traffic in the system by forwarding or discarding packets according to a set of rules based on multiple allow/deny criteria. This provides both improved network security and better utilization of the wireless medium.

The filtering is done at the base station, controlling the traffic between the network and the wireless link. The filtering features enable:

- Filtering packets arriving from the network interface (From Network Filtering), using a set of either Layer 2 or Layer 3/Layer 4 Filtering Rules.

- Filtering packets arriving from the wireless link (From Wireless Filtering), using a set of either Layer 2 or Layer 3/Layer 4 Filtering Rules.
- Discarding packets to/from specific MAC addresses (MAC Address Deny List). This is applicable to MAC Addresses behind SUs.

The filtering functionality is described in [Figure 4-2](#).

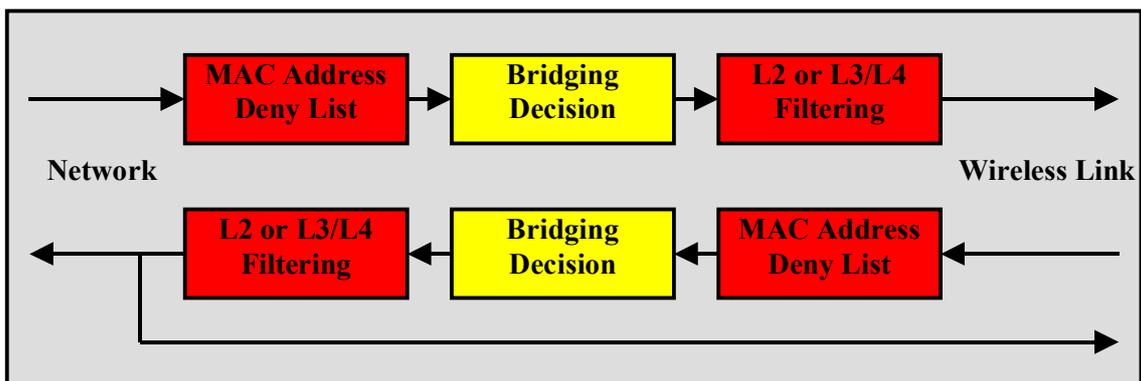


Figure 4-2: Filtering Functionality

The filtering definition process includes the following steps:

- 1 Defining list(s) of Filtering Rules. Each Filtering Rule defines a combination of values for certain packet fields. Filtering Rules can be of 2 types: Layer 2 Filtering Rules (using fields of the Ethernet frame) and Layer 3/Layer 4 Filtering Rules (using fields of the IP and/or UDP/TCP headers).
- 2 Associating each Interface (From Network, From Wireless Link) with a set of either Layer 2 or Layer 3/Layer 4 filters from the relevant Filtering Rules lists, and defining the action to be taken upon receiving a packet that matches any of the selected Filtering Rules: Allow (forward) or Deny (discard).

4.9.3 Common Operations in Services Menu

Except for the General submenu, all submenus available in the Services menu enable viewing, editing, deleting and adding applicable entities, such as Subscribers, Services, Service Profiles, etc.

Some or all of the following options are available in all submenus of the Services menu:

4.9.3.1 Show All

Select this option to see the current details of all entities in the applicable submenu (Subscribers, Services, etc.).

4.9.3.2 Show by

This option enables selecting an entity by a specific identifier such as Name or MAC Address. Select this option and enter the appropriate parameter's value to access the menu for a selected entity. This will enable you to choose from the following options:

- Show: Select this option to view the details of the selected entity.
- Update: Select this option to edit the details of the selected entity.
- Delete: Select this option to remove the selected entity from the database.

4.9.3.3 Show List

Select this option to view all defined entities in the applicable submenu sorted by the entity type ID (Subscriber ID, Service ID, etc.). The entity ID is an identifier attached automatically to each new entity. You can select a specific entity by its ID. This will open the Selected Entity menu with the Show, Update and Delete options described above.

4.9.3.4 Select

Select this option to select an entity by its Name. This will open the Selected Entity menu with the Show, Update and Delete options described above.

4.9.3.5 Add

Select this option to add a new entity to the database.

4.9.4 The Services Menu

The Services menu includes the following options:

- General
- Subscribers
- Services
- Service Profile

- Forwarding Rules
- Priority Classifiers
- QoS Profiles
- Filtering Rules
- Interface Filtering
- MAC Addresses Deny List
- QinQ
- Service Groups
- Managed VoIP

4.9.4.1 General

The General menu includes parameters that are common to all Subscribers. It includes the following options:

4.9.4.1.1 Show

Select this option to view the current values/options of the General parameters.

4.9.4.1.2 Update

Select this option to update any of the General parameters. The General parameters are:

4.9.4.1.2.1 Service Mode

The Service Mode of the base station.

The available options are:

1 - Advanced

2 - Quick

For more information on Service Modes refer to [Section 4.9.1.4](#).

The default Service Mode is Quick (2).

4.9.4.1.2.2 Default L2/Voice/Managed VoIP Service Profile

The default L2 or Voice or Managed VoIP Service Profile to be used by temporary SUs in Quick Mode.

Available profiles - any of the L2 or Voice or Managed VoIP Service Profiles existing in the database.

4.9.4.1.2.3 Default PPPoE Service Profile

The default PPPoE Service Profile to be used by temporary SUs in Quick Mode.

Available profiles - any of the PPPoE Service Profiles existing in the database.

4.9.4.2 Subscribers

The Subscribers menu enables defining new Subscribers, viewing or editing details of previously defined Subscribers and removing Subscribers from the database.

The Subscribers database in the μ BST can hold up to 1024 Subscribers.

The configurable Subscriber's parameters are:

4.9.4.2.1 Subscriber Name

This is the name of the subscriber, which must be unique for the entire network.

A Subscriber Name consists of up to 32 printable characters.

4.9.4.2.2 First Name

An optional parameter for information purposes.

A First Name consists of up to 50 printable characters.

4.9.4.2.3 Last Name

An optional parameter for information purposes.

A Last Name consists of up to 50 printable characters.

4.9.4.2.4 Description

An optional parameter for information purposes.

A Description consists of up to 50 printable characters

4.9.4.2.5 Admin Status

The administrative status of the Subscriber can be either Enabled or Disabled. Select Disabled to disable all services to the Subscriber.

4.9.4.3 Services

Each Service defines the Service Profile for a specific Subscriber's station(s) behind a specific SU.

The Services menu enables defining new Services, viewing or editing details of previously defined Services and removing Services from the database.

**NOTE**

The proper process of removing a Service is:

1. Disable the Service (set the Admin Status to Disable)
2. Delete the Service.

If the Service is not disabled prior to being the deleted, VLAN ID included in the VLAN List of the deleted Service may still be used by other Services to the same SU that use the same Forwarding Rule as the deleted Service.

The Services database in the μ BST can hold up to 1023 Services.

The Services menu also enables viewing and resetting the Service counters.

4.9.4.3.1 Service Parameters

The Service's parameters are:

4.9.4.3.1.1 Name

A Service Name consists of up to 32 printable characters.

4.9.4.3.1.2 Subscriber Name

The Subscriber to which the Service is allocated.

The Subscriber Name must be that of a Subscriber that exists in the database.

4.9.4.3.1.3 Service Profile Name

The Service Profile to be used in the Service.

The Service Profile Name must be that of a Service Profile that exists in the database.

4.9.4.3.1.4 SU MAC Address

The MAC Address of the SU associated with the Service.

The SU MAC Address must be that of a Permanent SU that exists in the database.

The MAC Address can be changed (in Update option) only if the Admin status of the Service is set to Disabled.

4.9.4.3.1.5 VLAN List

A list of VLAN IDs listing the VLAN IDs behind the SU associated with the applicable Subscriber.

The list includes VLAN IDs, each one in the range of 0 to 4094, separated by commas. Select null (empty string) for No VLAN. The VLAN List is not displayed in Show menus if the list is empty.

When Hybrid VLAN Mode is Off, the VLAN List can include up to 16 VLAN IDs.

When Hybrid VLAN Mode is On, the VLAN List can include up to 15 VLAN IDs (the 16th entry is reserved for No VLAN).

The maximum total number of VLAN IDs behind a single SU is 16. (15 when there is a Service with Hybrid VLAN Mode On is assigned to the SU).

Refer to [Section 4.9.1.5](#) for guidelines regarding VLAN ID configuration.

4.9.4.3.1.6 Hybrid VLAN Mode

Hybrid VLAN Mode of operation enables classification of both tagged and untagged packets or untagged packets only, according to the following rules:

Table 4-8: Hybrid VLAN Mode

Hybrid VLAN Mode	VLAN List	Forwarded Packets
Off	Exists	Only packets tagged with a VLAN ID that exists in the VLAN List. VLAN List can include up to 16 entries.
	Empty	All (both untagged and tagged with any VLAN ID)
On	Exists	Untagged packets, and packets tagged with a VLAN ID that exists in the VLAN List. VLAN List can include up to 15 entries.
	Empty	Only untagged frames.

Note that for each Service Type, a maximum of one Service that enables forwarding of untagged packets can be assigned to an SU. Forwarding of untagged packets is supported when either Hybrid VLAN Mode is On, or Hybrid VLAN Mode is Off and the VLAN List is empty. It is not possible to define for the same SU two Services of the same Service Type that enable forwarding of untagged packets. However, the same SU and untagged packets can be associated with two Services of different Service Types, provided one of them is a PPPoE Service (the combinations L2 and Voice, L2 and Managed VoIP, Voice and Managed VoIP are forbidden).

4.9.4.3.1.7 VLAN Classification Mode

The VLAN Classification feature enables using VLAN ID (in addition to destination MAC address) for classification of transparent service downlink traffic before transmission to the destination MAC address. The VLAN Classification feature supports applications where multiple VLANs are associated with a single MAC address, allowing to assign different services to different VLANs.

VLAN Classification Mode can be set to On only if the following conditions are met:

- The VLAN Transparency Mode of the applicable Service Profile is set to On.

- A single VLAN ID is defined for the Service. This means that the allowed combinations are:
 - » Hybrid VLAN Mode is Off and the VLAN List includes a single VLAN ID.
 - » Hybrid VLAN Mode is On and the VLAN List is empty.
- All Services assigned to the same SU must be configured with the same VLAN Classification Mode (Either On or Off).

4.9.4.3.1.8 Access VLAN

The Access VLAN parameter enables defining a VLAN ID to be used with untagged packets received on the Ethernet port of the SU. This parameter is applicable only for a transparent service (VLAN Transparency Mode is On) with Hybrid Mode set to On, or a transparent service with Hybrid Mode set to Off and an empty VLAN list.

A tag with the defined Access VLAN will be added by the Micro Base Station to untagged packets in the uplink. The tag will be removed by the Micro Base Station from packets in the downlink. For a multicast connection, the NPU will send in addition to the VLAN list the single Access VLAN. The SU will be responsible to remove the Access VLAN if it is received on a multicast connection.

A maximum of one Access VLAN can be defined per SU.

The range is from 1 to 4094 or null for no Access VLAN.

4.9.4.3.1.9 Admin Status

The administrative status of the Service can be either Enabled or Disabled. Select Disabled to disable the Service.

4.9.4.3.1.10 Operation Status

A read-only display of the operational status that is available in the Show menus only. Up means that the Service is currently in use.

4.9.4.3.2 Performance

The Performance sub-menu enables viewing and resetting the connections' counters of the Service. For each connection in each direction the following information is displayed:

- Connection ID and direction
- Connection Type: BE, NRT, RT or CG.

- QoS Profile Parameters: The values of the relevant QoS Profile's parameters.
- Bytes Submitted: The number of bytes submitted by upper layers to this connection.
- Bytes Transmitted: The number of bytes transmitted to the wireless port through this connection, including retransmissions.
- Bytes Received: The number of bytes received properly by the other side (bytes in packets received with a correct CRC). This counter is useful for calculating bytes loss in the wireless link when ARQ is disabled.
- Bytes Sent to Ethernet: Bytes sent to the Ethernet port by the receiving side. This counter is useful for calculating overall bytes loss. When compared to Bytes Transmitted, it indicates the number of bytes lost due to any of the following reasons:
 - » Loss in the wireless link
 - » Loss in the receiving side due to processing overload.
 - » Loss due to congestion in the Ethernet link.
- Bytes Retransmitted: The number of bytes retransmitted to the wireless port through this connection.
- Bytes Dropped from ARQ Queue: The number of bytes dropped from this connection due to a decision made by the ARQ mechanism to cease retransmission trials. This counter is applicable only for BE and NRT services when ARQ is enabled. Note that bytes in blocks that were retransmitted 5 times, which is the maximum number of retransmissions, are considered as dropped regardless of whether they were received properly or not, since the mechanism does not wait for acknowledgement for these blocks.
- Bytes Discarded: The number of bytes discarded from this connection due to congestion in the wireless link. (Bytes Submitted - Bytes Transmitted).
- Packets Submitted: The number of packets submitted by upper layers to this connection.
- Packets Transmitted: The number of packets transmitted to the wireless port through this connection, excluding retransmissions.

- **Packets Sent to Ethernet:** The number of packets sent to the Ethernet port by the receiving side. This counter is useful for calculating overall bytes loss. When compared to Bytes Transmitted, it indicates the number of bytes lost due to any of the following reasons:
 - » Loss in the wireless link
 - » Loss in the receiving side due to processing overload.
 - » Loss due to congestion in the Ethernet link.

- **Fragments Dropped from ARQ Queue:** The number of fragments dropped from this connection due to a decision made by the ARQ mechanism to cease retransmission trials. This counter is applicable only for BE and NRT services when ARQ is enabled. Note that because of the fragmentation process made by the ARQ mechanism, the number of dropped fragments may be up to 5 times higher than the number of lost Ethernet packets. In addition, fragment in blocks that were retransmitted 5 times, which is the maximum number of retransmissions, are considered as dropped regardless of whether they were received properly or not, since the mechanism does not wait for acknowledgement for these blocks.

- **Packets Discarded:** The number of packets discarded from this connection due to congestion in the wireless link. (Packets Submitted - Packets Transmitted).

- **Average Delay:** The average packet delay in milliseconds, measured for this connection over the last 15 seconds. The value is updated every 15 seconds.

- **Delay Variance:** The variance (the standard deviation squared) of the packet delay, in milliseconds squared, measured for this connection over the last 15 seconds. The value is updated every 15 seconds.

- **Maximum Delay:** The maximum packet delay in milliseconds, measured for this connection over the last 15 seconds. The value is updated every 15 seconds.

- **Data Loss Indicator (%):** The percentage of dropped packets, out of the total demand, measured for this connection over the last 15 seconds. The value is updated every 15 seconds.

$$DLI (\%) = 100 * (\text{Packets Dropped}) / (\text{Packets Submitted})$$

- **CIR Utilization (%)**: The CIR utilization measured for an RT or NRT connection over the last 15 seconds. Not applicable for BE and CG connections.

$k = 100 \times (\text{the minimum between bytes transferred and CIR}) / \text{CIR}$ is calculated for each 1 second interval. CIR Utilization equals the average of k over the last 15 seconds, and may vary from 0 to 100. The value is updated every 15 seconds.

- **EIR Utilization (%)**: Excess Information Rate utilization measured for a BE or NRT connection over the last 15 seconds. Not applicable for RT and CG connections.

$k = 100 \times (\text{bytes transferred} - \text{CIR}) / (\text{MIR} - \text{CIR})$ is calculated for each 1 second interval. In BE $\text{CIR} = 0$. The EIR Utilization equals the average of k over the last 15 seconds, and may range from 0 to 100. The value is updated every 15 seconds.

- **Average Throughput (bits/s)**: The average throughput, in bits/second, measured for this connection over the last 15 seconds. The value is updated every 15 seconds.

4.9.4.4 Service Profiles

Each Service Profile defines the properties of the defined service. Each Service Profile is associated with specific Forwarding Rule and Priority Classifier (Priority Classifiers are not applicable to Voice Service Profiles).

The Service Profile menu enables defining new Service Profiles, viewing or editing details of previously defined Service Profiles and removing Service Profiles from the database.

The Service Profiles database can hold up to 1024 Service Profiles.

The configurable Service Profile's parameters are:

4.9.4.4.1 Service Profile Name

A Service Profile Name consists of up to 32 printable characters.

4.9.4.4.2 Service Type

The Service Type of the Service Profile. The Service Type parameter is configurable only when defining a new Service Profile (Add). It is not changeable.

The currently available Service Type options are:

1 - L2

2 - PPPoE

3 - Voice

4 - Managed VoIP

For more details refer to [Section 4.9.1.2](#).

4.9.4.4.3 VLAN Transparency Mode

The VLAN Transparency Mode defines the method of transferring packets to the operator's upstream network.

When set to On, data packets sent from the Base Station to the backbone will be transferred transparently. The VPL ID parameter is not applicable to Service Profiles with VLAN Transparency Mode On.

Also The Forwarding Rule selection parameter is not applicable to transparent Service Profiles. All transparent Service Profiles share a single pre-configured Forwarding Rule, and a pre-configured QoS Profile for multicasts. For details on these profiles refer to [Table 4-21](#) and [Table 4-22](#). The pre-configured Transparent Forwarding Rule can be modified but not deleted.

- For tagged packets, the VPL ID will be their VLAN tag.
- For untagged packets, the VPL ID will be None.

For packets received from the network, the forwarding decision will be according to the packet's VPL ID. If the VPL ID is unknown (either None or not included in the list of VPL IDs defined for any of the existing, non-transparent Service Profiles), the system will assume this is a transparent VLAN packet (if at least one transparent Service is defined) and transfer it with the original VLAN tag (or untagged if there is no VLAN tag).



NOTE

The combination of VLAN Transparency Service On, Hybrid VLAN Mode Off and an empty VLAN List means that all packets are forwarded. This combination should be used only if the Service Provider can ensure that there will not be conflicts between VLAN IDs used by devices behind the SU and existing VPL IDs.

When set to Off, data packets sent from the Base Station to the backbone will be transferred with a VLAN tag according to the VPL ID. The VLAN ID in tagged frames arriving from the wireless network will be replaced by the VPL ID. For packets received from the network, the forwarding decision will be according to the Forwarding Rule defined in the Service Profile with a matching VPL ID.

To avoid conflicts, a transparent Service Profile cannot be assigned to a Service if the Service's VLAN ID list includes a VLAN ID that is equal to any of the already assigned VPL IDs.

**NOTE**

The combination VLAN Transparency Mode On, Hybrid VLAN Mode On and an empty VLAN List means that only untagged frames should be forwarded. Such a Service cannot be assigned if there is an assigned non-transparent Service with VPL ID = None.

4.9.4.4.4 VPL ID

A Virtual Private Link ID to be used in the backbone behind the Base Station. The VPL ID parameter is applicable only to Service Profiles with VLAN Transparency Mode Off.

To avoid conflicts, it is not allowed to define a VPL ID that is identical to any of the VLAN IDs in the already assigned transparent Services (Services using a Service Profile with VLAN Transparency Mode On).

Several Service Profiles may share the same VPL ID. However, the following rules must be met:

- Any number of L2 and/or VoIP Service Profiles may share the same VPL ID, provided they all use the same Forwarding Rule.
- Any number of PPPoE Service Profiles may share the same VPL ID, provided they all use the same Forwarding Rule.
- Any number of Managed VoIP Service Profiles may share the same VPL ID, provided they all use the same Forwarding Rule.
- Any number of L2, Voice, Managed VoIP and PPPoE Service Profiles may share the same VPL ID, provided that different Forwarding Rules are used for the groups of PPPoE, Managed VoIP and L2/Voice Service Profiles.

Available values are in the range of 0 to 4094 or null (empty string) for No VPL ID. A value of 4095 is displayed for No VPL ID.

4.9.4.4.5 Priority Marking Mode

In some cases, the network operator may want to use the BreezeMAX system for marking QoS classes, in order to provide network-wide QoS and enable the upstream network to handle the traffic accordingly. Within the BreezeMAX system, frames can be classified to QoS classes using Priority Classifiers, based on either a DSCP header or 802,1p tag. This applies only in cases where an

external networking device marks the applicable fields. BreezeMAX also enables marking data transmitted to the backbone network with either DSCP or 802.1p values, where the marking is done per Service Profile. This marking overrides marking performed by external devices behind the SU. Typically, Priority Marking by the μ BST will be used in the following cases:

- The external networking equipment behind the SU does not use priority marking.
- The service provider does not trust the priority marking defined by the user's equipment.
- The service provider uses a priority marking type (DSCP or 802.1p) that differs from the one used by the user's networking equipment.

The system supports three marking modes:

- 1 **Transparent Marking Mode** (No Priority Marking): In this case, the system should forward the frames to the uplink network without any changes.

If 802.1p classification is used at the SU, the frames will be transmitted to the operator's network according to the following rules:

- » If VLAN Transparency Mode is Off, the frames will be forwarded with their original 802.1p value and the configured VPL ID. If no VPL ID is configured (VPL ID = Null), the 802.1p tags will not be forwarded.
- » If VLAN Transparency Mode is On, the frames will be forwarded without any change (with the original 802.1p value and VLAN ID, if exists).

For DSCP classification at the SU:

- » If the VPL ID is configured (VLAN Transparency Mode Off), the μ BST adds an 802.1Q header with the configured VPL ID and 802.1p=0.
- » If VLAN Transparency Mode is On, the μ BST adds a 802.1Q header with the original VLAN ID (if exists).

Note that there may be a disparity between the DSCP values and the default 802.1p = 0 value.

2 802.1p Marking Mode:

- » If VLAN Transparency Mode is Off, all frames are marked with the configured VPL ID and the 802.1p Marking Value. If no VPL ID is configured (VPL ID = None), the 802.1Q header will include a VLAN ID = 0.
- » If VLAN Transparency Mode is On, all frames are marked with the original VLAN ID and the 802.1p Marking Value.



NOTE

If the Priority Marking Value is set to 0, untagged packets (without VLAN ID) will be forwarded without any change. This is applicable to transparent services and to non-transparent services with no VPL ID.

- » If 802.1p classification is used at the SU, the original 802.1p tags are replaced by the configured 802.1p Marking Value.
- » If DSCP classification is used at the SU, an 802.1Q header is added, with the configured VPL ID (if VLAN Transparency Mode is Off) or the original VLAN ID (if VLAN Transparency Mode is On), and the 802.1p Marking Value. The original DSCP bits are kept.

3 DSCP Marking Mode: All frames are marked with the configured DSCP Marking Values.

If 802.1p classification is used at the SU, the frames will be transmitted to the operator's network according to the following rules:

- » If VLAN Transparency Mode is Off, the frames will be forwarded with their original 802.1p value and the configured VPL ID. If no VPL ID is configured (VPL ID = Null), the 802.1p tags will not be forwarded.
- » If VLAN Transparency Mode is On, the frames will be forwarded without any change (with the original 802.1p value and VLAN ID, if exists).

If DSCP classification is used at the SU, the original DSCP bits will be replaced by the configured DSCP Marking Value.

**NOTE**

- PPPoE frames can be marked only with 802.1p. DSCP marking for PPPoE services is not supported.
- In L2 Services, many protocols may be carried over Ethernet. As BreezeMAX bridges all these protocols, there's no way to know what protocol type is encapsulated in Ethernet beforehand. Consequently, if DSCP Marking is configured for L2, the BreezeMAX system uses DSCP marking only for IP packets (e.g. Ethertype 0x0800). If 802.1p Marking is configured, it is used for all frames.

4.9.4.4.6 Priority Marking Value

The Priority Marking Value enables definition of the marking value for data frames transmitted to the backbone, according to the configured Priority Marking Mode:

Table 4-9: Priority Marking Values

Priority Marking Mode	Priority Marking Values Range
Transparent	Not Applicable
802.1p	0 - 7
DSCP	0 - 63

4.9.4.4.7 Forwarding Rule

The Forwarding Rule to be used by the Service Profile. The Forwarding Rule parameter is not applicable to transparent Service Profiles (VLAN Transparency Mode On), as all transparent Service Profiles share the same pre-defined Forwarding Rule.

The Forwarding Rule must be one of the names that exist in the database after being defined using the Forwarding Rule menu. The Service Type defined in the selected Forwarding Rule must match the one defined for the Service Profile. However, L2 Forwarding Rule can be used in a Voice Service Profile, and vice versa.

4.9.4.4.8 Priority Classifier (L2, PPPoE and Managed VoIP Service Type)

The Priority Classifier to be used by the Service Profile. Not applicable for Voice Services (DRAP-based) that use provide connections according to the gateway's properties, call status and required RTP bandwidth. In Managed VoIP services the Priority Classifier is only applied to the data connection.

The Priority Classifier must be one of the names that exist in the database, after being defined using the Priority Classifier menu.

4.9.4.4.9 **Maximum Number of Voice Calls (L2, Voice and Managed VoIP Service Type)**

The Maximum Number of Voice Calls parameter sets the upper limit on the number of simultaneous VoIP calls that can be supported by the Service using the Service Profile. This parameter is applicable for L2 and Voice Service Profiles for calls made by devices that support DRAP, and for Managed VoIP Service Profiles for calls to/from SIP gateways that are managed by suitable Policy Function and Application Function entities.

The available range is from 0 to 50 calls.



NOTE

To properly support Call Waiting, the Maximum Number of Voice Calls should be configured to a value that is twice the number of actual voice sessions that can be supported simultaneously.

4.9.4.4.10 **Service Group Name**

The name of the Service Group associated with the Service Profiles. Must be a Service Group Name that exists in the database. For more details refer to [Section 4.9.4.13](#).

4.9.4.4.11 **Voice Domain (Managed VoIP Service Type)**

The Voice Domain parameter specifies the Voice Domain associated with the Managed VoIP Service Profile. It must be one of the Voice Domains available in the database of the Micro Base Station.

4.9.4.5 **Forwarding Rules**

The Forwarding Rule includes the features that affect the wireless broadcast domain. Any number of L2 and/or Voice Services may belong to the same broadcast domain if they share the same Forwarding Rule. Data in a PPPoE Service can pass only between the subscriber's equipment and an Access Concentrator behind the Base Station. Any number of Managed VoIP Services may belong to the same broadcast domain if they share the same Forwarding Rule.

The Forwarding Rule menu enables defining new Forwarding Rules, viewing or editing details of previously defined Forwarding Rules and removing Forwarding Rules from the database.

The Forwarding Rules database can hold up to 255 Forwarding Rules.

The configurable Forwarding Rule's parameters are:

4.9.4.5.1 **Forwarding Rule Name**

A Forwarding Rule Name consists of up to 32 printable characters.

4.9.4.5.2 Service Type

The Service Type for which the Forwarding Rule is defined. The Service Type parameter is configurable only when defining a new Service Profile (Add). It is not changeable.

The currently available Service Type options are:

- 1 - L2
- 2 - PPPoE
- 3 - Voice
- 4 - Managed VoIP

For more details refer to [Section 4.9.1.2](#).

4.9.4.5.3 Unicast Relaying (L2 and Managed VoIP Service Type)

The Unicast Relaying parameter determines whether the AU performs unicast relaying. When the Unicast Relaying parameter is enabled, unicast packets originating from devices on the wireless link can be transmitted back to the wireless link devices. If disabled, these packets are not sent to the wireless link even if they are intended for devices on the wireless link.

Unicast Relaying is applicable only to L2 and Managed VoIP Forwarding Rules. In all PPPoE Forwarding Rules it is set to Disable. In all Voice Forwarding Rules it is set to Enable.

4.9.4.5.4 Broadcast Relaying (L2 and Managed VoIP Service Type)

The Broadcast Relaying parameter determines whether the AU performs broadcast relaying. When the Broadcast Relaying parameter is enabled, broadcast packets originating from devices on the wireless link are transmitted by the AU back to the wireless link devices, as well as to the backbone. If disabled, these packets are sent only to the backbone and are not sent back to the wireless link.

Broadcast Relaying is applicable only to L2 and Managed VoIP Forwarding Rules. In all PPPoE Forwarding Rules it is set to Disable. In all Voice Forwarding Rules it is set to Enable.

4.9.4.5.5 Unknown Forwarding Policy (L2 and Managed VoIP Services Type)

The Unknown Forwarding Policy parameter determines the mode of controlling the flow of information from the backbone to the wireless media. Select from the following options:

- 1 - Reject: The AU will transmit unicast packets only to those addresses that the AU knows to exist on the wireless link side.

2 - Forward: Enables the transmission of all packets, except unicast packets sent to addresses that the AU recognizes as being on its wired backbone side.

Unknown Forwarding Policy is applicable only to L2 and Managed VoIP Forwarding Rules. In all PPPoE Forwarding Rules it is set to Reject. In all Voice Forwarding Rules it is set to Forward.

4.9.4.5.6 Multicast VLAN ID

The Multicast VLAN ID parameter is applicable only to Services assigned to SUs with SW version below 2.0. The Multicast VLAN ID is the VLAN ID to be attached to multicast messages in order to enable full support of the VLAN feature by SUs with SW version below 2.0.

In SUs with SW version below 2.0, it was necessary to use behind the SU a VLAN switch with binding capability to support multiple VLAN IDs. The VLAN switch was responsible for duplicating all the packets to the correct ports according to the multicast connection, this required switch pre-configuration. If a VLAN switch with binding capability was not used, only a single VLAN ID behind the SU could be supported, and this VLAN ID has to be identical to the multicast VLAN ID.

In the current version, all packets received from the wireless port over a multicast connection are transmitted by the SU several times to the Ethernet port, each time with a different VLAN ID, taken from the VLAN ID list supplied by the μ BST.

Available values are in the range of 0 to 4094 or null (empty string) for No Multicast VLAN ID.

Refer to [Section 4.9.1.5](#) for guidelines regarding configuration of Multicast VLAN ID.

4.9.4.5.7 Multicast QoS Profile

The Multicast QoS Profile is the QoS Profile to be used for mulicast and broadcast messages.

The QoS Profile must be one of the names that exist in the database after being defined using the QoS Profile menu.

4.9.4.6 Priority Classifiers (L2, Managed VoIP and PPPoE Service Type)

The Priority Classifier defines the QoS Profiles to be allocated to users/sessions differentiated by DSCP or 802.1p priority classifiers. Priority Classifiers are not applicable to Voice Service Profiles.

Each Priority Classifier can define up to 4 uplink and 4 downlink QoS profiles.

**NOTE**

DSCP based Priority Classifiers are applicable only to IP or ARP traffic. It is not applicable to PPPoE and other Ethernet type traffic.

If a Priority Classifier is not applicable for a certain traffic (e.g. DSCP based profile with PPPoE traffic or 802.1p based profile with traffic that do not use VLAN tags), no prioritization scheme will be in effect and quality of service will be determined by the first QoS Profile in the applicable lists.

The Priority Classifier menu enables defining new Priority Classifiers, viewing or editing details of previously defined Priority Classifiers and removing Priority Classifiers from the database.

The Priority Classifiers database can hold up to 255 Priority Classifiers.

The configurable Priority Classifier's parameters are:

4.9.4.6.1 Priority Classifier Name

A Priority Classifier Name consists of up to 32 printable characters.

4.9.4.6.2 Priority Type

The prioritization mechanism used by the Priority Classifier.

The available options are:

1 - DSCP

2 - 802.1p

4.9.4.6.3 Uplink Upper Priority Limits

The Uplink Upper Priority Limits parameter enables to define up to four ranges, where each range may be assigned a different QoS Profile for uplink communication. The list includes up to 4 numbers separated by commas, where each number must be higher than its predecessor and the last number must be the highest available for the applicable priority type (7 for 802.1p, 63 for DSCP).

Examples for acceptable lists:

DSCP Priority: [10,30,50,63]; [21,42,63]; [20,63]; [63].

802.1p Priority: [2,4,6,7]; [1,5,7]; [6,7]; [7].

A ranges list of 21,42,63 means that packets with a priority from 0 to 21 will be transmitted using the first QoS Profile defined in the Uplink QoS Profiles list (see below), packets with a priority from 22 to 42 will be transmitted using the second QoS Profile defined in the Uplink QoS Profiles list and packets with a priority higher than 42 (43 63) will be transmitted using the third Uplink QoS Profile.

A ranges list that includes a single entry (63 for DSCP and 7 for 802.1p) means that priority based classification is not used.

4.9.4.6.4 Uplink QoS Profiles

The Uplink QoS Profiles parameter enables to define up to four QoS Profiles, where each entry is the QoS Profile associated with the applicable entry in the Uplink Upper Priority Limits list. The list includes up to four QoS Profile Names, where each name must be one of the names that exist in the database after being defined using the QoS Profile menu. Each entry in the Uplink QoS Profiles list is associated with the applicable entry in the Uplink Priority Ranges list.

4.9.4.6.5 Downlink Upper Priority Limits

The DownLink Upper Priority Limits list functionality is the same as that of the Uplink Upper Priority Limits list, except that the ranges are defined for downlink communication.

4.9.4.6.6 Downlink QoS Profiles

The Downlink QoS Profiles list functionality is the same as that of the Uplink QoS Profiles list, except that the QoS Profiles are associated with the entries in the Downlink Upper Priority Limits list.

4.9.4.7 QoS Profiles

The QoS Profile defines the Quality of Service parameters that are applicable when the QoS Profile is used.

Different QoS Profile Types are available to support different service requirements:

- **Real-Time (RT)** service is designed to meet the needs of Real Time Variable Bit Rate like services characterized by requirements for guaranteed rate and delay such as streaming video or audio. These services are dynamic in nature, but offer periodic dedicated requests opportunities to meet real-time requirements. Because the Subscriber Unit issues explicit requests, the protocol overhead and latency is increased, but capacity is granted only according to the real needs of the connection. QoS Profile parameters include Committed Information Rate (CIR) and Committed Time (CT).
- **Non-Real-Time (NRT)** service is very similar to the Real-Time polling service except that connections may utilize random access transmit opportunities for sending bandwidth requests. These Non Real Time Variable Bit Rate services, such as file transfer and Internet access with a minimum guaranteed rate, are characterized by requirement for a guaranteed rate, but can tolerate longer delays and are rather insensitive to jitter. QoS Profile parameters include Committed Information Rate (CIR), Committed Time (CT) and Maximum Information Rate (MIR) that limits the rate so that bandwidth intensive services will not expand to occupy the full bandwidth.

- **Best Effort (BE)** service is for services where neither throughput nor delay guarantees are provided. The Subscriber Unit sends requests for bandwidth in either random access slots or dedicated transmission opportunities. The occurrence of dedicated opportunities is subject to network load, and the Subscriber Unit cannot rely on their presence. Service parameters include Committed Time (CT) and Maximum Information Rate (MIR).

- **Continuous Grant (CG)** service is tailored for carrying constant bit rate (CBR) real-time services characterized by fixed size data packets on a periodic basis such as VoIP or E1/T1. The Base Station schedules regularly, in a preemptive manner, grants of the size defined at connection setup, without an explicit request from the Subscriber Unit. This eliminates the overhead and latency of bandwidth requests in order to meet the delay and jitter requirements of the underlying service. Service parameters include Packet Size (unsolicited grant size) and Sampling Rate (grant interval).

The priorities of allocating bandwidth to connections are in accordance with the QoS Type of the connections, in the following order:

- 1 CG
- 2 RT
- 3 NRT
- 4 BE

For each of the RT, NRT and BE connection, there is a second level of priorities according to the Committed Time (CT), where connections with CT=Short gets the highest priority and connections with CT=Long gets the lowest priority.

The QoS Profile menu enables defining new QoS Profiles, viewing or editing details of previously defined QoS Profiles and removing QoS Profiles from the database.

The QoS Profiles database can hold up to 255 QoS Profiles.

The available QoS Profile parameters depend on the QoS Type. The configurable QoS Profile's parameters are:

4.9.4.7.1 QoS Profile Name

A QoS Profile Name consists of up to 32 printable characters.

4.9.4.7.2 QoS Type

The QoS Type that defines the QoS parameters that are applicable to the service. The available options are:

- 1 - CG (Continuous Grant)

- 2 - RT (Real Time)
- 3 - NRT (Non real time)
- 4 - BE (Best Effort)

4.9.4.7.3 CT (RT, NRT and BE QoS Types)

The CT (Committed Time) parameter defines the time window over which the information rate is averaged to ensure compliance with the CIR or MIR parameter. It is used also to prioritize bandwidth allocation to connections, where for each QoS Type, connections with a shorter CT get higher priority.

The available options are Short (1), Medium (2), and Long (3).

The actual value in milliseconds for each of the three options varies according to the QoS type:

Table 4-10: CT Values

CT	BE	NRT	RT
Short	50 mS	50 mS	50 mS
Medium	100 mS	100 mS	100 mS
Long	200 mS	200 mS	200 mS

4.9.4.7.4 CIR (RT and NRT QoS Types)

CIR is the information transfer rate that the system is committed to transfer under normal conditions. The rate is averaged over a minimum increment of time, which is defined by the CT parameter.

The range is from 0 to 12,000 Kbps.

4.9.4.7.5 MIR (NRT and BE QoS Types)

MIR is the maximum information rate that the system will allow for the connection. The rate is averaged over a minimum increment of time, which is defined by the CT parameter.

The range is from 1 to 12,000 Kbps.

MIR cannot be lower than CIR (applicable to NRT QoS type).

4.9.4.7.6 Packet Size (CG QoS Type)

The Packet Size parameter defines the amount of data in bytes that is expected for each grant.

The range is from 64 to 1550 (bytes).

4.9.4.7.7 Sample Interval (CG QoS Type)

The Sample Interval parameter defines the time in milliseconds between two successive grants (inter arrival time).

The range is from 5 to 100 (milliseconds).

4.9.4.8 Filtering Rules

The Filtering Rules menu enables defining L2 Filtering Rules and L3/L4 Filtering Rules.

4.9.4.8.1 L2 Filtering Rules

An L2 (Layer 2) Filtering Rule includes the MAC Address and Ethertype. Each entry can be defined for either the Source or Destination MAC Address field. It is possible to define "Any" for either the MAC Address or Ethertype field (but not for both fields).

The L2 Filtering Rules menu enables defining new L2 Filtering Rule, viewing details of previously defined L2 Filtering Rules and removing L2 Filtering Rules from the database. It is not possible to edit the parameters of an existing L2 Filtering Rule. The database can hold up to 255 L2 Filtering Rules.

The configurable L2 Filtering Rule parameters are:

4.9.4.8.1.1 Rule Name

The name of the L2 Rule. The L2 Rule Name is a string of 1 to 32 printable characters.

4.9.4.8.1.2 MAC Address

A string of 6 octets (where each octet is represented by two hexadecimal numbers) separated by dashes ("-"). An empty entry means "Any". An "Any" MAC Address means that the filter is defined only by the Ethertype field.

4.9.4.8.1.3 MAC Address Direction

The direction (Source or Destination) of the MAC Address. Indicates whether the defined MAC Address is for the Source MAC Address field or the Destination MAC Address field in the Ethernet frame. The MAC Address Direction parameter is not applicable to "Any" MAC Address.

4.9.4.8.1.4 Ethertype

The Ethertype of the Ethernet frame. The Ethertype is defined by 4 hexadecimal digits. An empty entry means "Any" and is applicable only if a MAC Address is defined (the combination of "Any" for both the MAC Address and Ethertype is not allowed).

4.9.4.8.2 L3/L4 Filtering Rules

An L3/L4 (Layer 3/Layer 4) Filtering Rule includes the IP Address and Protocol. It is possible to define "Any" for either the IP Address or Protocol field (but not for both fields). The protocol can be TCP (6), UDP (17) or "Any". If the specified Protocol is either TCP (6) or UDP (17), either the Source or Destination can be defined. The direction is applicable for both IP Address and Port.

The L3/L4 Filtering Rules menu enables defining new L3/L4 Filtering Rule, viewing details of previously defined L3/L4 Filtering Rules and removing L3/L4 Filtering Rules from the database. It is not possible to edit the parameters of an existing L3/L4 Filtering Rule. The database can hold up to 255 L3/L4 Filtering Rules.

The configurable L3/L4 Filtering Rule parameters are:

4.9.4.8.2.1 Rule Name

The name of the L3/L4 Rule. The L3/L4 Rule Name is a string of 1 to 32 printable characters.

4.9.4.8.2.2 IP Address

A string of 4 decimal numbers (where each number is in the range from 1 to 255) separated by dashes ("-"). An empty entry means "Any". An "Any" IP Address means that the filter is defined only by the Protocol field (and optionally by the Port and Port Direction for UDP or TCP protocols).

4.9.4.8.2.3 Protocol

The protocol of the IP packet. The applicable protocols are TCP (6), UDP (17) or "Any". An empty entry means "Any" and is applicable only if an IP Address is defined (the combination of "Any" for both the IP Address and Protocol is not allowed).

4.9.4.8.2.4 Port

The TDP/UCP port number, which is applicable only if the Protocol parameter is configured to a value of either 6 (TCP) or 17 (UDP). The Port is defined by a number in the range from 0 to 65534.

4.9.4.8.2.5 Port Direction

The direction (Source or Destination) of the Port and the IP Address. Indicates whether the Port number and IP address are for the relevant Source or Destination field in the IP frame.

4.9.4.9 Interface Filtering

The Interface Filtering menu enables viewing and editing the filtering mechanisms to be used on frames received from the network (From Network Filtering) and from the wireless link (From Wireless Filtering).

The Interface Filtering menu also enables viewing and resetting the Filtering Rules Counters, which display for each of the applicable rules the number of frames matching the rule, accumulated since the last reset. In addition, there is a Non Matching counter, displaying the number of frames that did not match any of the relevant rules. The counters will be reset also after changing the Active Rule Type or disabling the Admin Status.

For each of the interfaces, the configurable parameters are:

4.9.4.9.1 L2 Filtering Rules List

The L2 Filtering Rules List submenu enables viewing details on the L2 Filtering Rules assigned to the interface, adding Rules (from the L2 Filtering Rules lists) to the list of Rules assigned to the interface, and deleting one or all Rules from the list. It also enables viewing/resetting the counter for a selected Rule. The counter displays the number of frames matching the Rule, accumulated since the last reset. The counter will be reset also after changing the Active Rule Type or disabling the Admin Status.

4.9.4.9.2 L3/L4 Filtering Rules List

The L3/L4 Filtering Rules List submenu enables viewing details on the L3/L4 Filtering Rules assigned to the interface, adding Rules (from the L3/L4 Filtering Rules lists) to the list of Rules assigned to the interface, and deleting one or all Rules from the list. It also enables viewing/resetting the counter for a selected Rule. The counter displays the number of frames matching the Rule, accumulated since the last reset. The counter will be reset also after changing the Active Rule Type or disabling the Admin Status.

4.9.4.9.3 Active Rule Type

The Active Rule Type parameter defines which of the Filtering Rules List is used.

The available options are Layer 2 and Layer 3/4.

The default option is Layer 2.

4.9.4.9.4 Admin Status

The Admin Status parameter defines whether the filtering mechanism is enabled or disabled.

The default option is Disabled.

4.9.4.9.5 Default Action

The Default Action parameter defines the action to be taken for a frame matching any of the applicable Filtering Rules: Deny (discard) or Allow (forward).

If the Default Action is Allow, all frames matching any of the applicable Filtering Rules will be forwarded, and all other frames will be discarded.

If the Default Action is Deny, all frames matching any of the applicable Filtering Rules will be discarded, and all other frames will be forwarded.

**NOTE**

L3/L4 Filtering Rules are applicable only to IP packets. If the Default Action is Allow, non-IP packets will be forwarded although they do not match any of the applicable Forwarding Rules.

The default option is Deny.

The menu also enables viewing and resetting the Non Matching Counter, which displays the total number of frames that did not match any of the applicable Filtering Rules, accumulated since the last reset. The counter will be reset also after changing the Active Rule Type or disabling the Admin Status.

**NOTE**

- Broadcasts and Management frames received from the network, whose destination is the μ BST, are never filtered.
- ARP messages will be forwarded automatically if the following conditions are met:
 1. Active Rule Type is L3/L4.
 2. The L3/L4 Filtering Rules List includes at least one L4 Filtering Rule (a defined protocol).
 3. The Default Action is Allow.This is applicable for both interfaces.

4.9.4.10 Filtering Examples

Example 1: Block All Broadcasts Except ARP and PPPoE

To block all broadcasts except ARP and PPPoE, define an L2 Filtering Rule that includes all other broadcasts. Typically this includes broadcasts with IP Ethertype. The parameters of this rule will be:

- MAC Address: FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF
- MAC Address Direction: Destination
- Ethertype: 800

Assuming the intention is to block this broadcast in both directions, this Filtering Rule should be included in the L2 Filtering Rules List of both the From Network Filtering and the From Wireless Filtering. In addition, for both Interfaces the following configuration should be defined:

- Active Rule Type: Layer 2
- Admin Status: Enabled
- Default Action: Deny

If broadcasts using other Ethertypes except IP, ARP and PPPoE are excepted, similar Layer 2 Filtering Rules should be defined for these Ethertypes (with the broadcast MAC Address), and these rules should be added to the applicable Layer 2 Filtering Rules Lists.

Example 2: Block DHCP Server behind SU

To prevent the use of a DHCP server behind an SU, define the following L3/L4 Filtering Rule:

- IP Address: Any (empty)
- Protocol: 17 (UDP)
- Port: 67 (the source port of the DHCP server)
- Port Direction: Source

This Filtering Rule should be included in the L3/L4 Filtering Rules List of the From Wireless Filtering. In addition, the following configuration should be defined for the From Wireless Filtering Interface:

- Active Rule Type: Layer 3/4
- Admin Status: Enabled
- Default Action: Deny

4.9.4.11 MAC Addresses Deny List

The MAC Addresses Deny List menu enables viewing and editing the MAC Addresses Deny List. This list is used to deny services to MAC Addresses behind SUs. Uplink frames whose source MAC address matches any of the entries in the list and downlink frames whose destination MAC address matches any of the entries in the list will be discarded.

The MAC Addresses Deny List menu also enables viewing and resetting the MAC Addresses Deny List Counters, which display for each of the entries in the list the

number of frames that were discarded because they match the entry, accumulated since the last reset.

4.9.4.12 QinQ

The system supports the 802.1 QinQ standard, which defines the way to have 2 VLAN tags (double-tagged frames). This procedure allows an additional VLAN tag, called Metro VLAN tag, to be inserted into an existing IEEE 802.1Q tagged frame. This is a solution to transport multiple customers' VLANs across the service provider's network without interfering with each other. The expanded VLAN space allows the service provider to provide certain services, such as Internet access, on specific VLANs for specific customers, and yet provide other types of services for other customers on other VLANs.

The main benefits of QinQ:

- Expands the number of VLANs to 4095*4095.
- Allows to a service provider to gather several services under a common VLAN.
- Enables mapping certain companies to certain Metro-Tags while still maintaining the benefits of using multiple VLANs.

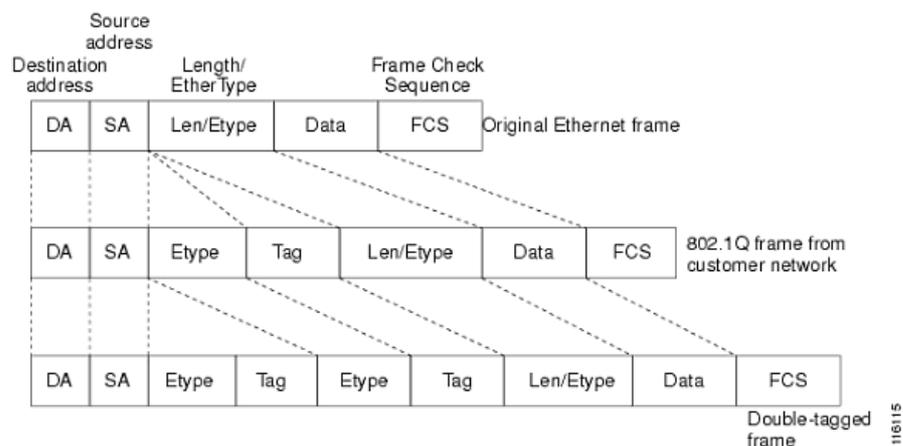


Figure 4-3: QinQ Double-Tagged Frames

QinQ implementation in BreezeMAX enables encapsulating Ethernet frame with Ethertype 8100 with a Metro tags using Ethertype 8100, 9100, or 9200:



Figure 4-4: Qinq Ethertypes in BreezeMAX

The Qinq menu includes the following options:

4.9.4.12.1 EtherType

The EtherType option enables viewing or updating the EtherType to be used with the Metro tag.

The available options are 8100, 9100 and 9200.

The default is 8100.

4.9.4.12.2 Metro Tag

The Metro Tag option enables viewing and defining the Metro Tag(s) configuration. Up to four Data VLAN ranges can be defined, where each range is associated with a different Metro Tag. The configurable parameters for each range (ID 1 to ID 4) are:

- **Metro Tag** (0 to 4094)
- **Data VLAN Lower Limit** (0 to 4094)
- **Data VLAN Upper Limit** (0 to 4094)

For each range (ID), the Data VLAN Upper Limit cannot be lower than the Data VLAN Lower Limit. In addition, overlapping of ranges is not allowed (a Data VLAN cannot belong to two different VLAN ranges).

Each packet received from the network side is checked for 802.1Qinq Tag. If it is double-tagged, the outer tag is removed.

Each outgoing packet is checked before it is transmitted to the network side. In case the packet is 802.1Q tagged and the tag is predefined as a tag that should be encapsulated by 802.1Qinq (the Data VLAN is included in any of the defined ranges), the packet is encapsulated by a second (outer) tag using the applicable Metro Tag and EtherType before transmission to the network. Untagged frames are not encapsulated by a Metro tag.

4.9.4.13 Service Groups

4.9.4.13.1 Introduction

The Service Group define the parameters of relevant DHCP Option 82 fields that optionally enable associating end-user equipment (devices behind the SU) with the applicable SU and/or Base Station.

The Base Station applies the DHCP option 82 Sub-options as defined by the applicable Service Group if (and only if) the end-user devices obtain an IP address to be used for the service through DHCP.

For more details on DHCP Option 82 Sub-options refer to RFC 3046 and specifically to paragraph 2.1.

To fully support this feature the operator should take care of the following:

- A** Service provisioning to devices configured with static IP are covered by other means outside the scope of the DHCP Option 82 feature.
- B** The DHCP-servers (and relay if applicable) know correctly how to handle the DHCP messages including the option 82 related aspects.
- C** The operator enables the feature in the system in such a way as to be compatible with the needs of the back-end processing.
- D** Any traffic that needs to be correlated should actually be processed by back-bone systems to obtain the correlation.

In order to handle the option 82 related aspects, the servers (and relay) need to reply with the same option 82 values as supplied in the client (Base Station) originated traffic and need to be able to process, store, forward to back-end systems etc. in order to benefit from the feature.

This feature provides the following benefits:

- The most common use of this feature is to learn the identification (details of the serving Base Station and/or SU) of the subscriber allocated with the IP address from the option 82 fields, and build a list with date and time to follow IP addresses allocations to the subscribers. The identification details on the Base Station.
- If the operator wants to identify/authenticate the subscriber during IP allocation it is required that the operator will built a pre-provisioned list with the applicable identification details of the allowed subscribers and compare it with the information sent in option 82 fields. If there is a match the operator will allocate the IP address and will associate the IP address allocated with the

subscriber identification and the date and time of address allocation. This will allow the operator to track the IP addresses allocations. If this subscriber is not in the pre-provisioned list it will be the DHCP request will be rejected or ignored.

In both options the operator is responsible for building and managing the list and/or preparing the pre-provisioning database.

Based on the notion that the SU and end-user devices are 'untrusted', any DHCP request with Option 82 incoming from the end-user will be dropped.

If both sub-option 1 and 2 are empty (None), then all option 82 behavior is eliminated including checks and counters and return packet option 82 removal.

4.9.4.13.2 The Service Groups Menu

The Service Groups menu enables defining new Service Groups, viewing or editing details of previously defined Service Groups and removing Service Groups from the database.

The database can hold up to 10 Service Groups.

The available Service Group parameters are:

4.9.4.13.2.1 Service Group Name

A Service Group Name consists of 1 to 32 printable characters.

4.9.4.13.2.2 Service Group SubType 1

This parameter defined the value to be included in DHCP Option 82 Sub-option 1 field (Base Station identification, or 802.1Q+802.1P used by the traffic, or none). The available options are:

- None
- BS ID 6label: The full Base Station ID (Operator ID, Cell ID and Sector ID)
- BS ID 5label: The Base Station ID without Sector ID (Operator ID and Cell ID)
- BS MAC dataport: The MAC address of the Data port
- BS MAC mngmport: The MAC address of the Management port
- BS IP data port: The IP address of the Data port
- BS IP mnmng port: The IP address of the Management port

- VLAN and priority: The VLAN and priority tag will be based on the values that will be assigned to the traffic transmitted to the backbone from the Data port side. The outer vlan-tag added by QinQ is never represented. The syntax is based on the fields of the ethertype 8100 (802.1Q and 802.1P) and will be ASCII string encoded like VqqqqPp with qqqq representing the VLAN in decimal and p the priority. Examples are "V0002P0" or "V4056P7". In case no ethertype 8100 is applied this is represented as "V----P-".
- Free Text: Up to 32 characters
- BS Display Name: The configured Base Station Name

The recommended option is BS MAC mngmport (the MAC address of the Management port).

4.9.4.13.2.3 Service Group SubType 2

This parameter defined the value to be included in DHCP Option 82 Sub-option 2 field (SU identification or none). The available options are:

- None
- CPE MAC
- CPE Name

The recommended option is CPE MAC.

4.9.4.13.3 Pre-Configured Service Groups

There are two pre-defined Service Groups: The @@NoOption82@@ Service Group and the @@Default@@ Service Group.

The @@NoOption82@@ Service Group cannot be deleted nor modified and both sub-option 1 and 2 are always empty (None).

The @@Default@@ Service Group cannot be deleted but it can be edited. After an upgrade from a previous SW version that does not support this feature both sub option 1 and 2 are empty (None). It is the Service Group associated with a Service Profile if no Service Group Name is selected specifically because of upgrade or import from another Base Station.

4.9.4.14 Managed VoIP

The Managed VoIP menu enables defining, editing and viewing the parameters that are necessary for proper provisioning of Managed VoIP Services. It also enables viewing and resetting relevant statistics counters.

The Managed VoIP menu includes the following options:

- **Policy Function General Parameters**
- **Policy Function Servers**
- **Voice Domain**

4.9.4.14.1 Policy Function General Parameters

The Policy Function General Parameters submenu enables viewing and editing the general parameters that affect the communication of the Micro Base Station with the Policy Function server(s) and with the SIP devices. Communication with PF servers is performed via the Data port, using the Management VLAN ID defined for this port. It also enables viewing the counter for number of packets received from unknown devices on the port dedicated for communication with the PF server(s).

The Policy Function General Parameters submenu includes the following options:

4.9.4.14.1.1 Show All

The Show All option enables viewing the current configuration of the following parameters:

- Retry Interval (sec)
- Maximum Number of Retries
- Keep Alive Timeout (sec)
- Listener Port Number
- UDP Destination Port

4.9.4.14.1.2 Retry Interval (sec)

The Retry Interval parameter defines the time in seconds to wait before retransmitting a message to the Policy Function server if no response is received.

The range is 1-5 (seconds).

The default value is 5 (seconds).

4.9.4.14.1.3 Maximum Number of Retries

The Maximum Number of Retries parameter defines the maximum number of retransmission attempts, before a decision is taken to revert to another server if configured (not applicable for current release), or give up.

The range is 0-5 (retries).

The default value is 3 (retries).

4.9.4.14.1.4 Keep Alive Timeout (sec)

The Micro Base Station maintains a keep alive mechanism with all defined servers. The Keep Alive Timeout defines the time in seconds to wait before reaching a decision that a certain server is no longer available.

The range is 60-180 (seconds).

The default value is 60 (seconds).

4.9.4.14.1.5 Listener Port Number

The Listener Port Number is the number of the port used by the Micro Base Station for listening to R3 messages from Policy Function server(s).

The range is 1-65535.

The default port number is 3799.

4.9.4.14.1.6 UDP Destination Port

The UDP Destination Port is the number of the port used by the Micro Base Station for receiving SIP messages from the voice gateway (provided that a Managed VoIP Service is provisioned to the relevant SU). The same port number must be configured in all the relevant voice gateways.

The range is 1-65535.

The default port number is 5060.

4.9.4.14.1.7 Statistics

The Statistics option enables viewing or resetting the PF Listener Counter that indicates the total number of packets received from unknown server(s) since the last reset.

4.9.4.14.2 Policy Function Servers

The Policy Function Servers menu enables viewing the status and parameters of defined Policy Function servers, updating the parameters of a server, adding a new server, or deleting a server from the database.

The Policy Function Servers menu includes the following options:

- Show All
- Add Server
- Select Server

4.9.4.14.2.1 Show All

Select this option to view the current status and parameters of all defined Policy Function servers. For each defined server the following details are displayed:

- IP Address
- UDP Port
- Operation Status (Up/Down)

4.9.4.14.2.2 Add Server

Select this option to define a new Policy Function server. Up to 255 Policy Function servers can be defined. You will be prompted to configure the following parameters:

4.9.4.14.2.2.1 IP Address

The IP address of the Policy Function server.

The default is null (IP address must be defined).

4.9.4.14.2.2.2 UDP Port

Specifies the UDP port number used by the Policy Function server for receiving messages from the Micro Base Station.

Valid values: 1 to 65535.

The default is 1812.

4.9.4.14.2.2.3 Shared Secret

Shared Secret is the key used for encrypting the user's credentials in the messages between the Micro Base Station and the Policy Function.

For security reasons, the Shared Secret is displayed as a series of asterisks, and when defining it for the first time or updating it, the user is prompted to re-enter the new Shared Secret for confirmation.

The Shared Secret comprises a string of 1 to 16 printable characters.

4.9.4.14.2.3 Select Server

This option enables selecting an existing Policy Function Server for viewing its status and parameters, updating its definition, deleting it from the database or viewing its Statistics counters. The selection is based on the server's IP address.

The available options are:

4.9.4.14.2.3.1 Show

Select this option to display current status and parameters of the server. For information on displayed details refer to [Section 4.9.4.14.2.1](#)),

4.9.4.14.2.3.2 Delete

Select this option to delete the server from the database.

4.9.4.14.2.3.3 Update

Select this option to update the parameters of the server (the IP Address cannot be changed).

4.9.4.14.2.3.4 Statistics

Select this option to display or reset the Statistics Counters for this server. The Statistics Counters display traffic information as follows:

- **Round Trip Time:** The time interval (in millisecond) between the most recent Access-Reply and the Access-Request that matched it from this server.
- **Requests from BS:** The number of PF Access-Request packets sent to this server. This does not include retransmissions.
- **Requests from PF:** The number of PF Resource-Request packets sent from this server.
- **Retransmissions to PF:** The number of PF Access-Request packets retransmitted to this server.
- **Access Accepts:** The number of PF accepted Resource-Request packets sent to this server.
- **Access Rejects:** The number of PF rejected Resource-Request packets sent to this server.
- **Malformed Packets:** The number of malformed PF Resource-Request packets received from this server. Malformed packets include packets with an invalid length.
- **Pending Requests:** The number of PF Access-Request packets destined for this server that have not yet timed out or received a response. This counter is incremented when an Access-Request is sent and decremented due to receipt of an Access-Accept or Access-Reject, a timeout or retransmission.

- **Timeouts:** The number of timeouts to this server that caused packets to be dropped.
- **Unknown Types:** The number of packets of unknown type which were received from this server.
- **Packets Dropped:** The number of PF packets of which were received from this server and were dropped for any reason.

4.9.4.14.3 Voice Domain

The Voice Domain menu enables viewing the parameters of defined Voice Domains, adding a new Voice Domain, updating the definition of a Voice Domain, or deleting a Voice Domain from the database.

The Voice Domain menu includes the following options:

- Show All
- Show List
- Select
- Add

4.9.4.14.3.1 Show All

Select this option to display the parameters of all Voice Domains in the database. For each Voice Domain, the following details are displayed:

- ID (1-10, assigned automatically when adding a new Voice Domain)
- Name
- PF IP address

4.9.4.14.3.2 Show List

Select this option to view a list of all Voice Domains in the database sorted by the Voice Domain IDs. For each Voice Domain ID, the Voice Domain Name is displayed. You can select a Voice Domain by its ID for viewing its details, editing its parameters or deleting it from the database.

4.9.4.14.3.3 Select

Use this option to select a Voice Domain by its Name for viewing its details, editing its parameters or deleting it from the database.

4.9.4.14.3.4 Add

Select this option to add a new Voice Domain. Up to 10 Voice Domains may be defined. The configurable parameters are:

4.9.4.14.3.4.1 Voice Domain Name

The name of the Voice Domain.

The Voice Domain Name comprises a string of 1 to 32 printable characters.

4.9.4.14.3.4.2 PF IP Address

The IP Address of the Policy Function associated with the Voice Domain. The same PF IP Address may be associated with several Voice Domains.

The PF IP Address must be the IP Address of one of the Policy Servers available in the database.

4.9.5 Defining Services

The process of defining completely new Services should be done "from bottom up", as each entity in the process is defined using one or more "lower level" entities.



To define a new Service "from scratch":

- 1 For Managed VoIP Services, define the required PF Server(s) and Voice Domains.
- 2 Define the required Service Groups.
- 3 Define the QoS profiles that should be available for the required Priority Classifiers (Uplink/Downlink QoS Profiles) and for the required Forwarding Rules (Multicast QoS Profile).
- 4 Define the Priority Classifiers that should be available for the required Service Profiles. All QoS Profiles required for the Uplink/Downlink QoS profiles list must be defined in advance.
- 5 Define the Forwarding Rules that should be available for the required Service Profiles. The QoS Profiles required for the Multicast QoS Profile parameter must be defined in advance.

- 6 Define the Service Profiles that should be available for the required Services. All required Priority Classifiers, Forwarding Rules, Service Groups and Voice Domains (for Managed VoIP Services) must be defined in advance.
- 7 Define the relevant Subscribers.
- 8 Verify that all applicable SUs are defined.
- 9 Use existing Subscriber Name, SU MAC Address and Service Profile Name to define the required Service.

Once there are various QoS Profiles, Priority Classifiers, Forwarding Rules, Service Profiles, Subscribers and SUs in the database, you can skip one or more of the steps 1 to 6.

4.9.6 Pre-configured Profiles

At manufacturing stage, each μ BST is configured with a set of pre configured Profiles. Certain parameters of these Profiles may be modified to reflect specific implementation requirements. When the software version is upgraded, these pre-configured Profiles will not be installed again in the μ BST. This is to prevent configuration problems from occurring if the modified Profiles differ from the factory loaded Profiles.

Note that upon resetting to μ BST to its default configuration (Set Factory Defaults), pre-configured Profiles that were modified are not affected.

The pre-configured Service Profiles are:

- **Internet Access L2** - for basic Internet Access service with Best Effort QoS, utilizing L2 Service Type. This is the recommended Default Service Profile for Quick Mode.
- **Internet Access PPPoE** - for basic Internet Access service with Best Effort QoS, utilizing PPPoE Service Type.
- **Gold, Silver and Bronze Teleworking** - for teleworking applications with different QoS requirements. The pre-configured Teleworking Services are asymmetric: DL Rate > UL Rate.
- **Gold, Silver and Bronze LAN-to-LAN** - for LAN-to LAN applications with different QoS requirements. The pre-configured LAN-to-LAN Services are symmetric: DL rate = UL rate.

- **VoIP Service Profiles** - for DRAP-based gateways. Two pre configured VoIP service Profiles are defined; VoIP 1V for gateways with a single POTS interface, and VoIP 2V for fully supporting gateways for 2 POTS interfaces.
- **Service Profiles for Generic (non-DRAP) VoIP Devices:**
 - » 1 POTS Basic VoIP G.729: 1 POTS, no Fax, G.729 codec with a 20 milliseconds sample interval, no priority marking.
 - » 1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.729: 1 POTS, T.38 Fax, G.729 codec with a 20 milliseconds sample interval, DSCP priority marking.
 - » 1 POTS Basic VoIP G.711: 1 POTS, no Fax, G.711 codec with a 20 milliseconds sample interval, no priority marking.
 - » 1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.711: 1 POTS, T.38 Fax, G.729 codec with a 20 milliseconds sample interval, DSCP priority marking.

For more details of defining Service Profiles for Generic (3rd party) VoIP devices, refer to [Appendix](#) .

Except for the Basic PPPoE Internet Access pre-configured Service Profiles, all pre-configured Data Service Profiles use L2 Service Type to ensure transport of all L2 and L3 protocols.

It is recommended to use the L2 Best Effort Internet Access pre configured Service Profile as the Default Data Service Profile in Quick Mode.

The following tables provide details on the pre-configured Service Profiles, Forwarding Rules, Priority Classifiers and QoS Profiles.

Table 4-11: Pre-Configured Data Service Profiles

Name	Service Type	VPL ID*	Forwarding Rule	Priority Classifier
Internet Access L2	L2	Null	Internet Access L2	BE Asymmetric
Internet Access PPPoE	PPPoE	11	Internet Access PPPoE	BE Asymmetric
Gold Teleworking	L2	12	Gold Teleworking	Gold Asymmetric
Silver Teleworking	L2	13	Silver Teleworking	Silver Asymmetric
Bronze Teleworking	L2	14	Bronze Teleworking	Bronze Asymmetric
Gold LAN-to-LAN	L2	15	Gold LAN-to-LAN	Gold Symmetric
Silver LAN-to-LAN	L2	16	Silver LAN-to-LAN	Silver Symmetric
Bronze LAN-to-LAN	L2	17	Bronze LAN-to-LAN	Bronze Symmetric

In all pre-configured Data Service Profiles, the **Priority Marking Mode** is set to Transparent and the **Maximum Number of Voice Calls** is 0.

* VPL IDs are assigned arbitrary values and should be configured in accordance with specific network implementation, taking into account the considerations described in [Section 4.9.1.5](#).

As Internet Access L2 is the recommended Default Data Service Profile, a VPL ID = None is used to ensure availability of basic data services in Quick Mode.

Table 4-12: Pre-Configured Forwarding Rules for Data Service

Name	Service Type	Unicast relaying	Broadcast Relaying	Unknown Forwarding Policy	Multicast QoS	Multicast VLAN*
Internet Access L2	L2	Disable	Disable	Forward	BE 750	Null
Internet Access PPPoE	PPPoE	Disable (hard coded)	Disable (hard coded)	Reject (hard coded)	BE 750	Null
Gold Teleworking	L2	Disable	Disable	Forward	NRT 1500/1750	Null
Silver Teleworking	L2	Disable	Disable	Forward	NRT 1000/1150	Null
Bronze Teleworking	L2	Disable	Disable	Forward	NRT 750/850	Null
Gold LAN-to-LAN	L2	Enable	Enable	Forward	NRT 1500/1750	Null
Silver LAN-to-LAN	L2	Enable	Enable	Forward	NRT 1000/1150	Null
Bronze LAN-to-LAN	L2	Enable	Enable	Forward	NRT 750/850	Null

* Multicast VLANs are assigned arbitrary values and should be configured in accordance with specific network implementation, taking into account the considerations described in [Section 4.9.1.5](#).

Table 4-13: Pre-Configured Priority Classifiers for Data Services

Name	Type	Uplink Priority ranges	Uplink QoS Profiles	Downlink Priority ranges	Downlink QoS Profiles
BE Asymmetric	802.1p	7	BE 96	7	BE 750
Gold Asymmetric	802.1p	7	NRT 128/192	7	NRT 1500/1750

Table 4-13: Pre-Configured Priority Classifiers for Data Services

Name	Type	Uplink Priority ranges	Uplink QoS Profiles	Downlink Priority ranges	Downlink QoS Profiles
Silver Asymmetric	802.1p	7	NRT 96/128	7	NRT 1000/1150
Bronze Asymmetric	802.1p	7	NRT 96/128	7	NRT 750/850
Gold Symmetric	802.1p	7	NRT 1500/1750	7	NRT 1500/1750
Silver Symmetric	802.1p	7	NRT 1000/1150	7	NRT 1000/1150
Bronze Symmetric	802.1p	7	NRT 750/850	7	NRT 750/850

Table 4-14: Pre-Configured QoS Profiles for Data Services

Name	Type	CIR (Kbps)	MIR (Kbps)	CT
BE 96	Best Effort	NA	96	Medium
BE 750	Best Effort	NA	750	Medium
NRT 96/128	Non Real Time	96	128	Medium
NRT 128/192	Non Real Time	128	192	Medium
NRT 750/850	Non Real Time	750	850	Medium
NRT 1000/1150	Non Real Time	1000	1150	Medium
NRT 1500/1750	Non Real Time	1500	1750	Medium

Table 4-15: Pre-Configured Voice Service Profiles (for DRAP-based Gateways)

Name	Service Type	VPL ID*	Priority Marking Mode	Maximum Number of Voice Calls**	Forwarding Rule
VoIP 1V	Voice	18	Transparent	2	VoIP
VoIP 2V	Voice	18	Transparent	4	VoIP

* VPL IDs are assigned arbitrary values and should be configured in accordance with specific network implementation, taking into account the considerations described in [Section 4.9.1.5](#).

** To properly support Call Waiting, an additional connection must be available. Thus, the Maximum Number of Voice Calls is twice the maximum expected number of actual voice sessions.

Table 4-16: Pre-Configured Service Profiles for Generic (non-DRAP) VoIP Services

Name	Service Type	VPL ID*	Forwarding Rule	Priority Classifier
1 POTS Basic VoIP G.729	L2	19	VoIP	1 POTS Basic VoIP G.729
1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.729	L2	19	VoIP	1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.729
1 POTS Basic VoIP G.711	L2	19	VoIP	1 POTS Basic VoIP G.711
1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.711	L2	19	VoIP	1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.711

In all pre-configured Service Profiles for generic VoIP services, the **Priority Marking Mode** is set to Transparent and the **Maximum Number of Voice Calls** is 0.

* VPL IDs are assigned arbitrary values and should be configured in accordance with specific network implementation, taking into account the considerations described in [Section 4.9.1.5](#).

Table 4-17: Pre-Configured Forwarding Rule for Voice Services

Name	Service Type	Unicast Relaying	Broadcast Relaying	Unknown forwarding Policy	Multicast QoS	Multicast VLAN*
VoIP	Voice	Enable (hard coded)	Enable (hard coded)	Forward (hard coded)	BE 128	Null

* Multicast VLANs are assigned arbitrary values and should be configured in accordance with specific network implementation, taking into account the considerations described in [Section 4.9.1.5](#).

All pre-configured Service profiles for VoIP (DRAP-based Voice Services and Generic (3rd party) VoIP Services share the same pre-configured Forwarding Rule, to enable direct communication between all users of VoIP Services, regardless of the gateway type and other possible differences in the Service Profiles.

Table 4-18: Pre-Configured Priority Classifiers for Generic (non-DRAP) VoIP Service

Name	Type	Uplink Priority Ranges	Uplink QoS Profiles	Downlink Priority Ranges	Downlink QoS Profiles
1 POTS Basic VoIP G.729	DSCP	63	CG 47	63	CG 47

Table 4-18: Pre-Configured Priority Classifiers for Generic (non-DRAP) VoIP Service

Name	Type	Uplink Priority Ranges	Uplink QoS Profiles	Downlink Priority Ranges	Downlink QoS Profiles
1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.729	DSCP	0	BE 64	0	BE 64
		26	RT 6	26	RT 6
		63	CG 38	63	CG 38
1 POTS Basic VoIP G.711	DSCP	63	CG 108	63	CG 108
1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.711	DSCP	0	BE 64	0	BE 64
		26	RT 11	26	RT 11
		63	CG 88	63	CG 88

Table 4-19: Pre-Configured BE and RT QoS Profile for Voice Services

Name	Type	CIR (Kbps)	MIR (Kbps)	CT
BE 64	Best Effort	NA	64	Medium
BE 128	Best Effort	NA	128	Medium
RT 6	Real Time	6	NA	Short
RT 11	Real Time	11	NA	Short

Table 4-20: Pre-Configured CG QoS Profile for Generic (non-DRAP) VoIP Services

Name	Type	Packet Size (Bytes)	Sample Interval (msec)
CG 38	Continuous Grant	94	20
CG 47	Continuous Grant	117	20
CG 88	Continuous Grant	218	20
CG 108	Continuous Grant	270	20

The following tables provide details on the pre-configured Profiles used for Transparent Services (VLAN Transparency Mode is ON):

Table 4-21: Pre-Configured Forwarding Rule for Transparent Services

Name	Service Type	Unicast Relaying	Broadcast Relaying	Unknown forwarding Policy	Multicast QoS	Multicast VLAN
@@Transparent@@	L2	Enable	Enable	Forward	@@Transparent@@	Null

**NOTE**

The name of the Transparent Forwarding Rule cannot be edited.

Table 4-22: Pre-Configured QoS Profile for Transparent Services

Name	Type	CIR (Kbps)	MIR (Kbps)	CT
@@Transparent@@	Best Effort	NA	128	Long

4.10 Parameters Summary

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Micro Base Station General Parameters			
Device Name	Up to 255 printable characters	Null	Yes
Device Location	Up to 255 printable characters	Null	Yes
Date	DD.MM.YYYY		
Time	HH:MM:SS (24 hours format. HH=1-23)		
Enable SNTP	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Disable	No
Primary SNTP Server IP	IP address	69.36.224.15	No
Secondary SNTP Server IP	IP address	131.188.3.221	No
Local Clock UTC Difference	-12:00 to +13:00 (hours) in 30 minutes steps	00:00	No
Daylight Saving	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Disable	No
Daylight Saving Start Date	dd:mm		No
Daylight Saving Stop Date	dd:mm		No
Daylight Saving Advance Factor	0 to 4:45 (hours) in 15 minutes steps		No
ATPC Enable/Disable	1 - Disable 2 - Enable Disable is temporary until next reset of the AUs	Enable	Yes
Optimal Uplink RSSI (dBm)	-103 to -60	-73	Yes
Operator ID	X.X.X X: 0-255	186.190.0	No
Cell ID	X.X X: 0-255	0.250	No
Statistics Collection Interval	30 - 900 (seconds) using 30 seconds steps	900 (seconds)	Yes

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
PMTM Status	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Disable	No
Alarms and Traps			
Traps Display Filter-Minimum Severity	1 - Critical 2 - Major 3 - Minor 5 - Info 4 - Warning	Info	Yes
Traps Display Filter-Days	1 - 31 days	31 days	Yes
Traps Configuration-Admin Status	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Enable	Yes
Trap Configuration-Severity	1 - Critical 2 - Major 3 - Minor 4 - Warning 5 - Info	Depends on trap	Yes
Trap Configuration-Suppression Interval	0 - 86,400 (seconds). 0 means no suppression	0 (no suppression)	Yes
Unit Control Parameters			
Administrator Password	Up to 16 printable characters, case sensitive	admin	Yes
Installer Password	Up to 16 printable characters, case sensitive	installer	Yes
Monitor Password	Up to 16 printable characters, case sensitive	monitor	Yes
Monitor Inactivity Timeout	0 - 60 minutes (0 means no timeout)	10 minutes	Yes
Management Port Parameters			
Management Port IP Address	IP address	10.0.0.1	No
Management Port Subnet Mask	IP address	255.255.255.0	No
Management Port Gateway	IP address	0.0.0.0	No

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Management Port Destination Subnet	IP address	0.0.0.0	No
Management Port Destination Subnet Mask	IP address	0.0.0.0	No
Management Port Auto negotiation Option	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Enable	No
Management Port Speed and Duplex	1 - 10 Mbps Half Duplex 2 - 10 Mbps Full duplex 3 - 100 Mbps Half Duplex 4 - 100 Mbps Full Duplex		No
Management Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Enable	Yes
Data Port Parameters			
Data Port IP Address	IP address	1.1.1.3	No
Data Port Subnet Mask	IP address	255.255.255.0	No
Data Port Gateway	IP address	0.0.0.0	No
Data Port Management VLAN ID	0-4094 or Null for No VLAN	Null	Yes
Data Port Auto Negotiation Option	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Enable	No
Data Port Speed and Duplex	1 - 10 Mbps Half Duplex 2 - 10 Mbps Full duplex 3 - 100 Mbps Half Duplex 4 - 100 Mbps Full Duplex		No
Data Port Management Traffic Enable/Disable	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Enable	Yes
Authorized Managers			
Authorized Manager IP Address	IP address	NA	Yes
Authorized Manager Send Traps	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	NA	Yes

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Authorized Manager Read Community	Up to 23 printable characters, case sensitive	NA	Yes
Authorized Manager Write Community	Up to 23 printable characters, case sensitive	NA	Yes
Bridge			
Bridge Aging Time	1 - 1440 minutes or 0 for no aging	10 minutes	Yes
Voice			
DRAP TTL Retries	1 - 100	4	Yes
DRAP Signaling QoS Profile	1 - Default 2 - Advanced	Default	Yes
Radio Cluster Parameters			
Radio Cluster ID	1 - 4		Yes
Name	Up to 32 printable characters	Null	Yes
Location	Up to 255 printable characters	Null	Yes
Sector Heading	0 - 359 (degrees)	0	Yes
Sector Beam Width	0 - 359 (degrees)	90	Yes
ODU Parameters			
ODU ID	1 - 4		Yes
Associated Radio Cluster	1 - 4 (must be a defined Radio cluster ID)		Yes
Configured ODU Frequency Band	According to loaded Frequency Bands file	0 (Not Defined)	Yes
Tx Power (dBm)	13 - 50 (dBm, in increments of 0.25) Actual value depends on ODU Type	28	Yes
Admin Status	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Disable	Yes
Micro Base Station-MAC			
Sector ID	0-255	0	No
ARQ Enable/Disable	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Disable	No

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Maximum Cell Radius (km)	1.75/3.5 MHz bandwidth: 10 -110 (km) 7 MHz bandwidth: 5 to 65 (km)s	20 (km)	No
Micro Base Station-Phy			
Bandwidth (MHz)	1 - 1.75 2 - 3.5 4 - 7 (supported only by Four-Channels units)	3.5	No
Micro Base Station-Multi Channel			
Diversity Mode	1 - No Diversity 2 - Second Order Diversity 3 - Rx Diversity	No Diversity	Automatic reset
Channel ID	1 - 4 (1 - 2 in current release)		
Associated ODU	1 -4 (must be a defined ODU ID)		No
Downlink (Tx) Frequency (MHz)	According to the Configured ODU Frequency Band and AU Bandwidth		No
Admin Status	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Disable	No
Micro Base Station-Multirate			
Multirate Enable/Disable	1 - Disable 2 - Enable Disable is temporary until next reset	Enable	Yes
Uplink Basic Rate	1 - BPSK 1/2 2 - BPSK 3/4 3 - QPSK 1/2 4 - QPSK 3/4 5 - QAM16 1/2 6 - QAM16 3/4 7 - QAM64 2/3 8 - QAM64 3/4	BPSK 1/2	Yes

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Downlink Basic Rate	1 - BPSK 1/2 2 - BPSK 3/4 3 - QPSK 1/2 4 - QPSK 3/4 5 - QAM16 1/2 6 - QAM16 3/4 7 - QAM64 2/3 8 - QAM64 3/4	BPSK 1/2	Yes
Micro Base Station-Voice Parameters			
Maximum Number of Voice Calls	0 - 50	50	Yes
SU Control Parameters			
SU Status	1 - Permanent 2 - Temporary	Permanent	Yes
SU Registration Parameters			
Name	Up to 32 printable characters		Yes
Organization Name	Read-only		NA
Address	Read-only		NA
Country Code	Read-only		NA
SU MAC Parameters			
Base Station ID	X.X.X.X.X.X X: 0 - 255		No
Base Station ID Mask	X.X.X.X.X.X X: 0 - 255		No
SU Phy Parameters			
Bandwidth (MHz)	1 - 1.75 2 - 3.5 4 - 7 (not supported by first generation SU, SU Type "CPE")		No
Uplink (Tx) Frequency (MHz)	Depends on Frequency Bands Group available for the μ BST, and the Bandwidth.		No

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
SU Multirate and ATPC Parameters			
Uplink Rate	Applicable only if Multirate in μ BST, is disabled: 1 - BPSK 1/2 2 - BPSK 3/4 3 - QPSK 1/2 4 - QPSK 3/4 5 - QAM16 1/2 6 - QAM16 3/4 7 - QAM64 2/3 8 - QAM64 3/4	New SU: Uplink Basic Rate. Connected SU: Last used rate	Yes
Uplink Rate	Applicable only if Multirate in μ BST, is disabled: 1 - BPSK 1/2 2 - BPSK 3/4 3 - QPSK 1/2 4 - QPSK 3/4 5 - QAM16 1/2 6 - QAM16 3/4 7 - QAM64 2/3 8 - QAM64 3/4	New SU: Uplink Basic Rate. Connected SU: Last used rate	Yes

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Downlink Rate	Applicable only if Multirate in μ BST is disabled: 1 - BPSK 1/2 2 - BPSK 3/4 3 - QPSK 1/2 4 - QPSK 3/4 5 - QAM16 1/2 6 - QAM16 3/4 7 - QAM64 2/3 8 - QAM64 3/4	New SU: Downlink Basic Rate. Connected SU: Last used rate.	Yes
Minimum Uplink Data Rate	1 - BPSK 1/2 2 - BPSK 3/4 3 - QPSK 1/2 4 - QPSK 3/4 5 - QAM16 1/2 6 - QAM16 3/4 7 - QAM64 2/3 8 - QAM64 3/4	1 - BPSK 1/2	Yes
Minimum Downlink Data Rate	1 - BPSK 1/2 2 - BPSK 3/4 3 - QPSK 1/2 4 - QPSK 3/4 5 - QAM16 1/2 6 - QAM16 3/4 7 - QAM64 2/3 8 - QAM64 3/4	1 - BPSK 1/2	Yes
SU Ethernet Port Parameters			
Ethernet Port Auto Negotiation	1 - Disable 2 - Enable		No

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Ethernet Port Speed and Duplex	Available only if Ethernet Port Auto Negotiation is set to Disable 1 - 10 Mbps Half Duplex 2 - 10 Mbps Full duplex 3 - 100 Mbps Half Duplex 4 - 100 Mbps Full Duplex		No
SU Installer Password			
Installer Password	Up to 20 printable characters, case sensitive	installer	Yes
SU Bridging Parameters			
Enable/Disable Limit on Number of Supported Devices	1 - Disable 2 - Enable	Disable	Yes
Maximum Number of Supported Devices	1 - 512	512	Yes
Bridge Aging Time	1 - 1440 minutes	3 minutes	Yes
SU Best BST/AU Parameters			
Best BST/AU Support	1 - Disable 2 - Enable		No
Preferred BST/AU ID	X.X.X.X.X.X X: 0 - 255		No
Preferred BST/AU ID Mask	X.X.X.X.X.X X: 0 - 255		No
BST/AU ID	X.X.X.X.X.X X: 0 - 255		No
BST/AU ID Mask	X.X.X.X.X.X X: 0 - 255		No
SU Radio Parameters-Frequency Scanning			
Admin Status	1 - Disable 2 - Enabl		Yes
Start Downlink (Rx) Frequency (MHz)	Depends on Frequency Bands Group available for the AU, and the Bandwidth.		No

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
End Downlink (Rx) Frequency (MHz)	Depends on Frequency Bands Group available for the AU, and the Bandwidth.		No
Scanning Main Step (KHz)	125 to 1750 in steps of 125		No
Scanning Intermediate Steps	Up to 8 numbers (1-8) separated by commas, or 0 (none)		No
Services - General Parameters			
Service Mode	1 - Advanced 2 - Quick	Quick	Yes
Default L2/Voice/Managed VoIP Service Profile	Name of an existing L2 or Voice or Managed VoIP Service Profile, or None.	Internet Access L2	Yes
Default PPPoE Service Profile	Name of an existing PPPoE Service Profile, or None.	None	Yes
Services - Subscribers Parameters			
Subscriber Name	Up to 32 printable characters. Must be unique in the network.		Yes
First Name	Up to 50 printable characters.		Yes
Last Name	Up to 50 printable characters.		Yes
Description	Up to 50 printable characters.		Yes
Admin Status	1 - Disabled 2 - Enabled		Yes
Services - Services Parameters			
Service Name	Up to 32 printable characters.		Yes
Subscriber Name	A Subscriber Name (up to 32 printable characters) that exists in the database		Yes
SU MAC Address	MAC Address of an SU that exists in the database		Yes
Service Profile Name	A Service Profile Name (up to 32 printable characters) that exists in the database		Yes
VLAN List	A list of different numbers separated by commas where each entry is from 1 to 4094. Null is for No VLAN. Up to 16 entries when Hybrid VLAN Mode is Off. Up to 15 entries when Hybrid VLAN Mode is On.		Yes

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Hybrid VLAN Mode	1 - Off 2 - On		Yes
VLAN Classification Mode	1 - Off 2 - On		Yes
Access VLAN	1-4094		Yes
Admin Status	1 - Disabled 2 - Enabled		Yes
Services - Service Profiles Parameters			
Service Profile Name	Up to 32 printable characters.		Yes
Service Type	Applicable only for new Service Profiles (Add): 1 - L2 2 - PPPoE 3 - Voice 4 - Managed VoIP		Yes
VLAN Transparency Mode	1 - Off 2 - On		Yes
VPL ID	0 - 4094 or null for No VPL ID.		Yes
Priority Marking Mode	1 - Transparent 2 - 802.1p 3 - DSCP		Yes
Priority Marking Value	802.1p: 0 - 7 DSCP: 0 - 63		Yes
Forwarding Rule	A Forwarding Rule Name (up to 32 printable characters) that exists in the database		Yes
Priority Classifier	Not applicable for Voice Service Profiles. A Priority Classifier Name (up to 32 printable characters) that exists in the database		Yes
Maximum Number of Voice Calls	Not applicable for PPPoE Service Profiles. 0 - 50		Yes

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Service Group Name	A Service Group Name (up to 32 printable characters) that exists in the database		Yes
Voice Domain	Applicable only for Managed VoIP Services. A Voice Domain Name (up to 32 printable characters) that exists in the database		Yes
Services - Forwarding Rule Parameters			
Forwarding Rule Name	Up to 32 printable characters		Yes
Service Type	Applicable only for new Service Profiles (Add): 1 - L2 2 - PPPoE		Yes
Unicast Relaying	Applicable only for L2 and Managed VoIP Service type: 1 - Disabled 2 - Enabled		Yes
Broadcast Relaying	Applicable only for L2 Managed VoIP Service type: 1 - Disabled 2 - Enabled		Yes
Unknown Forwarding Policy	Applicable only for L2 Managed VoIP Service type: 1 - Reject 2 - Forward		Yes
Multicast VLAN ID	0 - 4094 or null for No Multicast VLAN. Applicable only for Services assigned to SUs with SW version below 2.0.		Yes
Multicast QoS Profile	A QoS Profile Name (up to 32 printable characters) that exists in the database		Yes
Services - Priority Classifiers Parameters			
Priority Classifier Name	Up to 32 printable characters		Yes
Priority Type	1 - DSCP 2 - 802.1p		Yes

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Uplink Priority Ranges	Up to 4 numbers separated by commas, where each number must be higher than its predecessor and the last number must be the highest available for the applicable priority type (7 for 802.1p, 63 for DSCP).		Yes
Uplink QoS Profiles	Up to four QoS Profile Names separated by commas, where each name (up to 32 printable characters) is a name of a QoS Profile that exists in the database. The number of entries in the list must be identical to number of entries in Uplink Priority Ranges list.		Yes
Downlink Priority Ranges	Up to 4 numbers separated by commas, where each number must be higher than its predecessor and the last number must be the highest available for the applicable priority type (7 for 802.1p, 63 for DSCP).		Yes
Downlink QoS Profiles	Up to four QoS Profile Names separated by commas, where each name (up to 32 printable characters) is a name of a QoS Profile that exists in the database. The number of entries in the list must be identical to number of entries in Downlink Priority Ranges list.		Yes
Services - QoS Profiles Parameters			
QoS Profile Name	Up to 32 printable characters		Yes
QoS Type	1 - CG 2 - RT 3 - NRT 4 - BE		Yes
CT	1 - Short 2 - Medium 3 - Long		Yes
CIR (Kbps)	Applicable to RT and NRT: 0 - 12,000		Yes

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

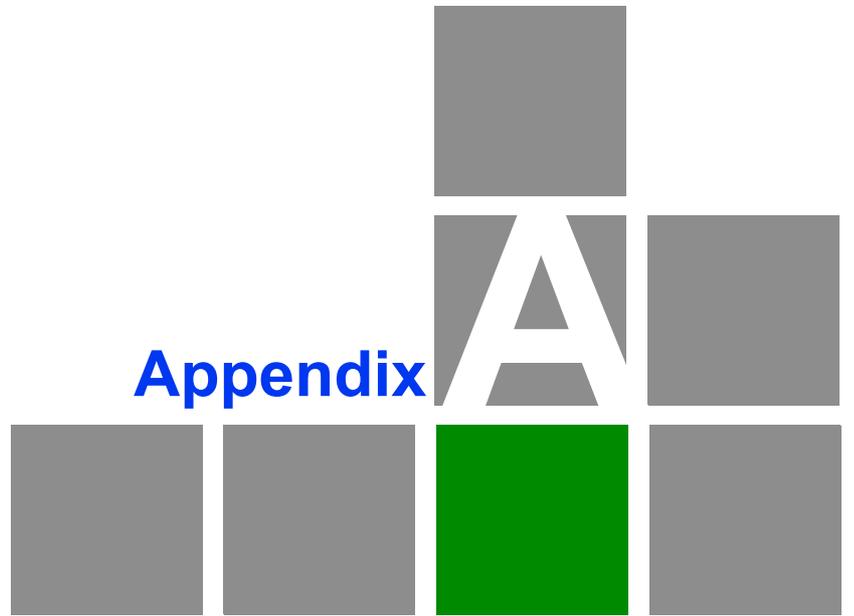
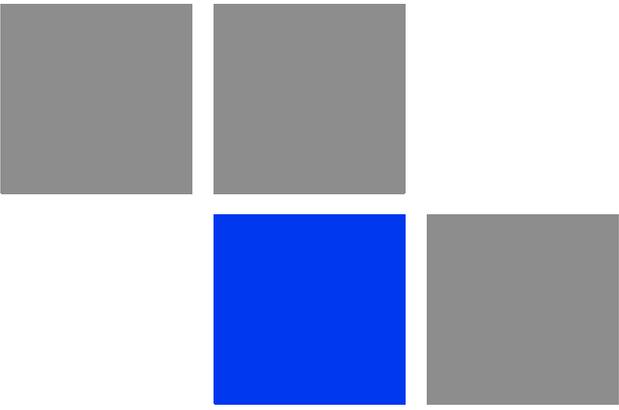
Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
MIR (Kbps)	Applicable to NRT and BE: 1 - 12,000. MIR cannot be lower than CIR (NRT)		Yes
Packet Size (Bytes)	Applicable to CG 64 - 1550 (Bytes)		Yes
Sample Interval (msec)	Applicable to CG 5 - 100 (milliseconds)		Yes
L2 Filtering Rules Parameters			
L2 Filtering Rule Name	Up to 32 printable characters		Yes
MAC Address	MAC address or null for Any		Yes
MAC Address Direction	1 - Source 2 - Destination		Yes
Ethertype	4 hexadecimal digits or null for Any		Yes
L3/L4 Filtering Rules Parameters			
L3/L4 Filtering Rule Name	Up to 32 printable characters		Yes
IP Address	IP address or null for Any		Yes
Protocol	6 (TCP), 17 (UDP), or null for Any		Yes
Port	0-65534		Yes
Port Direction	1 - Source 2 - Destination		Yes
From Wireless Filtering/From Network Filtering Parameters			
L2 Filtering Rules List - Add	L2 Filtering Rule ID		Yes
L3/L4 Filtering Rules List - Add	L3/L4 Filtering Rule ID		Yes
Active Filtering Rule Type	1 - Layer 2 2 - Layer 3/4	Layer 2	Yes
Admin Status	1 - Disabled 2 - Enabled	Disabled	Yes
Default Action	1 - Deny 2 - Allow	Deny	Yes
MAC Address Deny List			

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Add	MAC address (of a device behind SU)		Yes
QinQ			
EtherType	1 - 8100 2 - 9100 3 - 9200	8100	Yes
Metro Tag (per range)	0-4094		Yes
Data VLAN Lower Limit (per range)	0-4094		Yes
Data VLAN Upper Limit (per range)	0-4094		Yes
Service Groups Parameters			
Service Group Name	1 to 32 characters		Yes
Sub Type 1	0 - None 1 - BS ID 6label 2 - BS ID 5label 3 - BS MAC dataport 4 - BS MAC mngmport 5 - BS IP data port 6 - BS IP mnmng port 7 - VLAN and priority 8 - Free Text 9 - BS Display Name (up to 32 characters)		Yes
Sub Type 2	0 - None 1 - CPE MAC 2 - CPE Name		Yes
Services - Managed VoIP - Policy Function General Parameter			
Retry Interval	1-5 (seconds)	5	Yes
Maximum Number of Retries	0-5	3	Yes
Keep alive Timeout	60-180 (seconds)	60	Yes

Table 4-23: Micro Base Station Monitor Parameters Summary

Parameter	Range	Default	Run-Time Updated
Listener Port Number	1-65535	3799	Yes
UDP Destination Port	1-65535	5060	Yes
Services - Managed VoIP - Policy Function Servers			
IP Address	IP address		Yes
UDP Port	1-65535	1812	Yes
Shared Secret	1-16 printable characters		Yes
Services - Managed VoIP - Voice Domain			
Voice Domain Name	1-32 printable character		Yes
PF IP Address	IP address of a Policy Server that exists in the database		Yes



Appendix

Software Upgrade

In This Appendix:

- [“Before you Start” on page 210](#)
- [“File Loading Procedure” on page 211](#)
- [“Completing the Software Upgrade \(Switching Versions\)” on page 213](#)

A.1 Before you Start



NOTE

This section describes software upgrades using the Monitor program. The upgrade procedure can also be performed using AlvariSTAR. For instructions on using AlvariSTARS for software upgrade, refer to "The Software Upgrade Manager" section in the AlvariSTARS User Manual.

Loading of new SW files to the unit's FLASH memory can be performed by a simple loading procedure using a TFTP application. Upgrade packages can be obtained from the Technical Support section of Alvarion's web site, <http://www.alvarion.com/>.

Before performing an upgrade procedure, be sure you have the most recent instructions, and that the correct SW files are available in your computer.

If you are loading new SU/AU SW files, verify that no more than two SU/AU SW files exist in the NPU/ μ BST. If there are three SU/AU SW files in the unit, one of them must be deleted before loading a new SU/AU SW file.



To view the current SU/AU SW files in NPU/ μ BST:

Select SU/AU > SW Files in NPU/ μ BST > Show Files.



To delete an SU/AU SW file from NPU/ μ BST:

Select SU/AU > SW Files in NPU/ μ BST > Delete a File and enter the name of the file to be deleted.

A.2 File Loading Procedure



To load software files:

- 1 Verify that you have IP connectivity from your computer to the NPU/ μ BST (either the MGMT or the DATA port). To verify the connection, ping the unit's IP address and verify that PING replies are being received.
- 2 To perform the upgrade, use a DOS TFTP utility with the following syntax:
tftp i hostaddress put sourcefile

where *-i* stands for binary mode and *hostaddress* is the IP address of the unit to be upgraded (NPU/ μ BST). The *put* command instructs the PC client to send a file to the *hostaddress*. *sourcefile* is the name of the SW file in the PC Client.

For example, to load the file *npu_2_0_1_15* to the NPU whose IP address is 172.17.31.215, use the following command:

```
tftp -i 172.17.31.215 put npu_2_0_1_15
```



NOTE

It is recommended to upgrade all system elements with the latest software version. Nevertheless, it is possible to upgrade each unit separately and independently.

- 3 Following a successful completion of the file loading process, the Transfer successful DOS message is displayed.
- 4 The unit decompresses the loaded file and checks the integrity of the new version. The new version replaces the previous shadow version only after verification. If verification tests fail, the loaded version will be rejected. The unit will reject a file if either the file name or the version number matches the current Main versions.
- 5 Check that the loaded versions exist in the unit:



To view the current NPU/ μ BST SW Versions in the unit:

Select *Unit Control > SW Versions Control > Show Versions*.



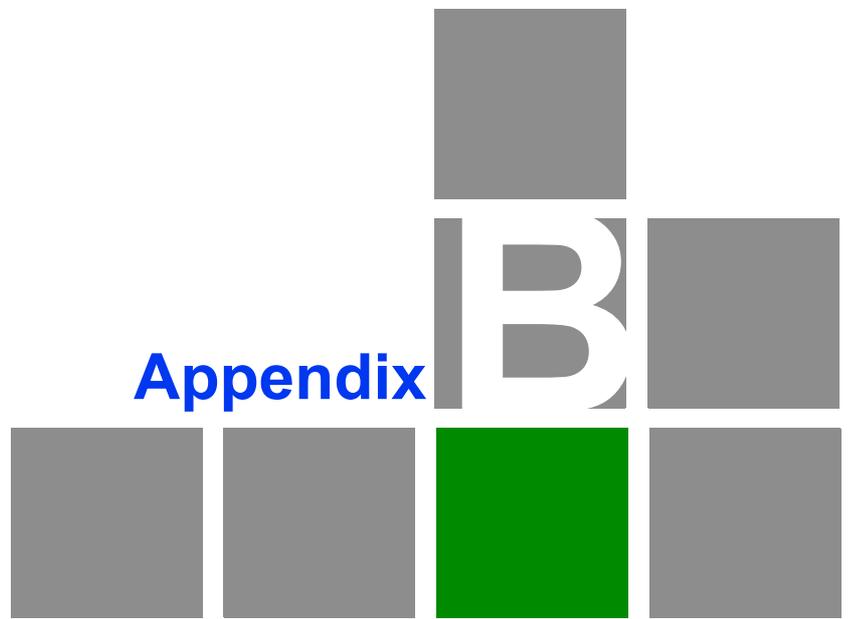
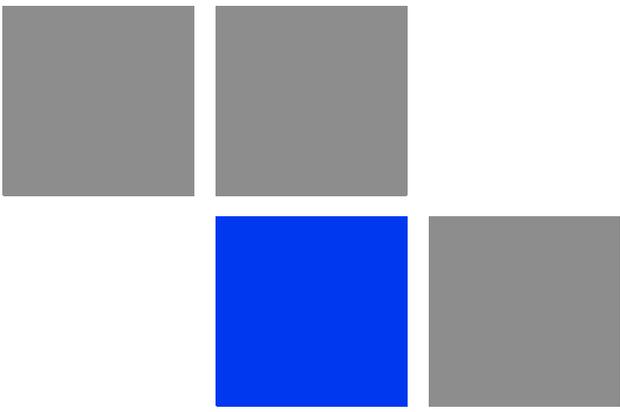
To view the current NPU/ μ BST SW Versions in the unit:

Select *SU/AU* > *SW Files in NPU/ μ BST* > *Show Files*.

A.3 Completing the Software Upgrade (Switching Versions)

After verifying successful upload of all software files, set the new version as the main version in each one of the upgraded system elements:

- SU(s): Select the SU that should be upgraded. Select *Unit Control > SW Versions Control > Set as Main*, and enter the name of the new SU SW file. The unit will reset automatically and will use the new version after power-up. Repeat the process for all SUs that should be upgraded.
- AU(s): Select the AU that should be upgraded. Select *Unit Control > SW Versions Control > Set as Main*, and enter the name of the new AU SW file. The unit will reset automatically. After power-up, the unit will use the new version. Repeat the process for all AUs that should be upgraded.
- NPU/ μ BST: Select *Unit Control > SW Versions Control > Run from Shadow*. The system will reset automatically. After power-up, the NPU/ μ BST will run from the new version, that at this stage is still marked as the Shadow Version. To switch versions, select *Unit Control > SW Versions Control > Set as Main*.



Defining Service Profiles for Generic VoIP Gateways

In This Appendix:

- [“Introduction” on page 216](#)
- [“1 POTS Basic VoIP G.729 Service Profile” on page 218](#)
- [“1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.729 Service Profile” on page 220](#)
- [“1 POTS Basic VoIP G.711 Service Profile” on page 222](#)
- [“1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.711 Service Profile” on page 224](#)

B.1 Introduction

This section describes the method used for defining the pre-configured Service Profiles for Generic (3rd party) VoIP devices that do not use the DRAP protocol. The same principles can be used for modifying the pre-configured profiles or creating new ones for VoIP services that have different characteristics.

B.1.1 Priority Marking

We distinguish between two types of Service Profiles for Generic VoIP devices:

- **Marking is not used:** This scenario is applicable when the VoIP device behind the SU does not support either DSCP or 802.1p marking to distinguish between different VoIP related traffic types, or when such marking is not used for any reason. The implication is that a single Continuous Grant connection should be used for all VoIP traffic.
- **Marking is used:** This scenario is applicable when the VoIP device is capable of marking the different VoIP related traffic types. The assumption is that 3 different priority marks are used: One for RTP traffic, the second for RTCP and VoIP Signaling, and a third one for Data (Device Management).

B.1.2 General Assumptions

- **Protocol Header:** 18 bytes for Ethernet L2 header (including 4 bytes for VLAN), plus 40 bytes of IP/UDP/RTP headers. A total of 58 bytes.
- **RTCP bandwidth:** RFC 3556, Session Description Protocol (SDP) Bandwidth Modifiers for RTP Control Protocol (RTCP) Bandwidth, states that normally, the amount of bandwidth allocated to RTCP in an RTP session is 5% of the session bandwidth. To be on the safe side allocate 10% of the RTP bandwidth to RTCP.
- **VoIP Signaling:** Cisco states that its IP Phones generate approximately 150 bps signaling traffic (without L2 overhead). To be on the safe side assume 2 Kbps of VoIP Signaling traffic for each POTS interface.
- **Fax:** Fax services are assumed to be based on T.38 Fax Relay. Protocol Header is assumed to be 58 bytes (same as for RTP).
- **Data:** Data traffic may include ARP, DHCP, TFTP, SNMP, HTTP and other management protocols. The recommended default bandwidth value is up to 64

Kbps if a Best Effort connection is used for this traffic. If a Continuous Grant service is used for all VoIP related traffic, a lower bandwidth will be allocated to Data traffic. Note that the use of bandwidth consuming protocols when an active call is present should be avoided.

B.2 1 POTS Basic VoIP G.729 Service Profile

B.2.1 Service Characteristics

- G.729 codec, 20msec sample interval
- 1 POTS
- No Fax
- Priority marking behind the SU is not used: All VoIP related traffic is classified onto a single Continuous Grant (CG) connection.
- Multiple media streams to support Call-Waiting: If the traffic exceeds the BW allocated to the CG connection, the SU may request to double the allocated BW.

B.2.2 RTP BW Calculation

The required bandwidth for a G.729 call (8 Kbps codec bit rate) with RTP and 20 bytes of voice payload is:

Total packet size (bytes) = (Ethernet of 18 bytes) + (IP/UDP/RTP header of 40 bytes) + (voice payload of 20 bytes) = 78 bytes

Total packet size (bits) = (78 bytes) * 8 bits per byte = 624 bits

PPS (Packets Per Second) = (8 Kbps codec bit rate) / (160 bits) = 50 pps

Note: 160 bits = 20 bytes (voice payload) * 8 bits per byte

Bandwidth per call = Total packet size (624 bits) * 50 pps = 31.2 Kbps

B.2.3 RTCP BW Calculation

RTCP BW is 10% of RTP: 10 % of 31.2 Kbps approximately 3.1 Kbps.

B.2.4 QoS Profile

The calculated bandwidth required for RTP traffic is 31.2 Kbps. To accommodate for other traffic types, such as RTCP (up to 3.1 Kbps), Voice Signaling (up to 2 Kbps) and Data (Device Management), we allocate to it a total bandwidth of 31.2 x 1.5=46.8 Kbps (equivalent to a Packet Size of 936 bits, or 117 bytes). The SU may

request twice this BW so it will be allocated with up to approximately 94 Kbps. This is assumed to be sufficient for all traffic scenarios, including Call Waiting.

Thus, the CG 47 QoS Profile parameters are:

- Packet Size: 117 bytes
- Sample Interval: 20 msec

B.3 1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.729 Service Profile

B.3.1 Service Characteristics

- G.729 codec, 20msec sample interval
- 1 POTS
- T.38 Fax
- DSCP priority marking behind the SU is used, with the following values:
 - 63: RTP traffic
 - 26: RTCP and VoIP traffic
 - 0: Data traffic
- Single media stream to support Call-Waiting

B.3.2 Voice RTP BW Calculation

The required bandwidth for a G.729 call (8 Kbps codec bit rate) with RTP and 20 bytes of voice payload is:

Total packet size (bytes) = (Ethernet of 18 bytes) + (IP/UDP/RTP header of 40 bytes) + (voice payload of 20 bytes) = 78 bytes

Total packet size (bits) = (78 bytes) * 8 bits per byte = 624 bits

PPS (Packets Per Second) = (8 Kbps codec bit rate) / (160 bits) = 50 pps

Note: 160 bits = 20 bytes (voice payload) * 8 bits per byte

Bandwidth per call = Total packet size (624 bits) * 50 pps = 31.2 Kbps

B.3.3 Voice RTCP BW Calculation

RTCP BW is 10% of RTP: 10 % of 31.2 Kbps is 3.12 Kbps.

B.3.4 T.38 14,400 Kbps Fax RTP BW Calculation

The required bandwidth with a 20 msec sample interval is as follows:

Total packet size (bytes) = (Ethernet of 18 bytes) + (IP/UDP/RTP header of 40 bytes) + (voice payload of 36 bytes) = 94 bytes

Total packet size (bits) = (94bytes) * 8 bits per byte = 752 bits

PPS = (14.4 Kbps bit rate) / (288 bits) = 50 pps

Note: 288 bits = 36 bytes (voice payload) * 8 bits per byte

Bandwidth per call = total packet size (752bits) * 50 pps = 37.6 Kbps

Since Fax BW is higher than Voice BW, the Fax BW requirement mandates the CG connection's attributes. This is true for all G.729 and G.723 codecs.

B.3.5 FAX RTCP BW Calculation

RTCP BW is 10% of RTP: 10 % of 37.6 Kbps is 3.76 Kbps.

B.3.6 QoS Profiles

B.3.6.1 CG QoS for RTP traffic

The calculated bandwidth required for RTP traffic is 37.6 Kbps (equivalent to a Packet Size of 752 bits, or 94 bytes). Thus, the CG 38 QoS Profile parameters are:

- Packet Size: 117 bytes
- Sample Interval: 20 msec

B.3.6.2 RT QoS for RTCP and VoIP Signaling

The required bandwidth is 5.76 Kbps (3.76 Kbps for Fax RTCP plus 2 Kbps for VoIP Signaling). We round it up to 6 Kbps. Thus, the required RT 6 QoS Profile parameters are:

- CIR: 6 Kbps
- CT: Short

B.3.6.3 BE QoS for Data

As stated, the recommended QoS Profile for Data is BE 64, with the following parameters:

- MIR: 64 Kbps
- CT: Medium

B.4 1 POTS Basic VoIP G.711 Service Profile

B.4.1 Service Characteristics

- G.711 codec, 20msec sample interval
- 1 POTS
- No Fax
- Priority marking behind the SU is not used: All VoIP related traffic is classified onto a single Continuous Grant (CG) connection.
- Multiple media streams to support Call-Waiting: If the traffic exceeds the BW allocated to the CG connection, the SU may request to double the allocated BW.

B.4.2 RTP BW Calculation

The required bandwidth for a G.711 call (64 Kbps codec bit rate) with RTP and 160 bytes of voice payload is:

Total packet size (bytes) = (Ethernet of 18 bytes) + (IP/UDP/RTP header of 40 bytes) + (voice payload of 160 bytes) = 218 bytes

Total packet size (bits) = (218 bytes) * 8 bits per byte = 1744 bits

PPS = (64 Kbps codec bit rate) / (1280 bits) = 50 pps

Note: 1280 bits = 160 bytes (voice payload) * 8 bits per byte

Bandwidth per call = total packet size (1744 bits) * 50 pps = 87.2Kbps

B.4.3 RTCP BW Calculation

RTCP BW is 10% of RTP: 10 % of 87.2 Kbps approximately 8.7 Kbps.

B.4.4 QoS Profile

The calculated bandwidth required for RTP traffic is approximately 88 Kbps. To accommodate for other traffic types, such as RTCP (up to 8.7 Kbps), Voice Signaling (up to 2 Kbps) and Data (Device Management), we allocate to it a total bandwidth of 108 Kbps (equivalent to a Packet Size of 2160 bits, or 270 bytes). The SU may request twice this BW so it will be allocated with up to approximately

216 Kbps. This is assumed to be sufficient for all traffic scenarios, including Call Waiting.

Thus, the CG 108 QoS Profile parameters are:

- Packet Size: 270 bytes
- Sample Interval: 20 msec

B.5 1 POTS Advanced VoIP G.711 Service Profile

B.5.1 Service Characteristics

- G.729 codec, 20msec sample interval
- 1 POTS
- T.38 Fax
- DSCP priority marking behind the SU is used, with the following values:
 - 63: RTP traffic
 - 26: RTCP and VoIP traffic
 - 0: Data traffic
- Single media stream to support Call-Waiting

B.5.2 Voice RTP BW Calculation

The required bandwidth for a G.711 call (64 Kbps codec bit rate) with RTP and 160 bytes of voice payload is:

Total packet size (bytes) = (Ethernet of 18 bytes) + (IP/UDP/RTP header of 40 bytes) + (voice payload of 160 bytes) = 218 bytes

Total packet size (bits) = (218 bytes) * 8 bits per byte = 1744 bits

PPS = (64 Kbps codec bit rate) / (1280 bits) = 50 pps

Note: 1280 bits = 160 bytes (voice payload) * 8 bits per byte

Bandwidth per call = total packet size (1744 bits) * 50 pps = 87.2 Kbps

B.5.3 Voice RTCP BW Calculation

RTCP BW is 10% of RTP: 10 % of 87.2 Kbps is 8.72 Kbps.

B.5.4 T.38 14,400 Kbps Fax RTP BW Calculation

The required bandwidth with a 20 msec sample interval is as follows:

Total packet size (bytes) = (Ethernet of 18 bytes) + (IP/UDP/RTP header of 40 bytes) + (voice payload of 36 bytes) = 94 bytes

Total packet size (bits) = (94 bytes) * 8 bits per byte = 752 bits

PPS = (14.4 Kbps bit rate) / (288 bits) = 50 pps

Note: 288 bits = 36 bytes (voice payload) * 8 bits per byte

Bandwidth per call = total packet size (752 bits) * 50 pps = 37.6 Kbps

As Fax BW is lower than Voice BW, the Voice BW requirement mandates the CG connection's attributes. This is true for all G.711 codecs.

B.5.5 FAX RTCP BW Calculation

RTCP BW is 10% of RTP: 10 % of 37.6 Kbps is 3.76 Kbps.

B.5.6 QoS Profiles

B.5.6.1 CG QoS for RTP traffic

The calculated bandwidth required for RTP traffic is 87.2 Kbps (equivalent to a Packet Size of 1744 bits, or 218 bytes). Thus, the CG 88 QoS Profile parameters are:

- Packet Size: 218 bytes
- Sample Interval: 20 msec

B.5.6.2 RT QoS for RTCP and VoIP Signaling

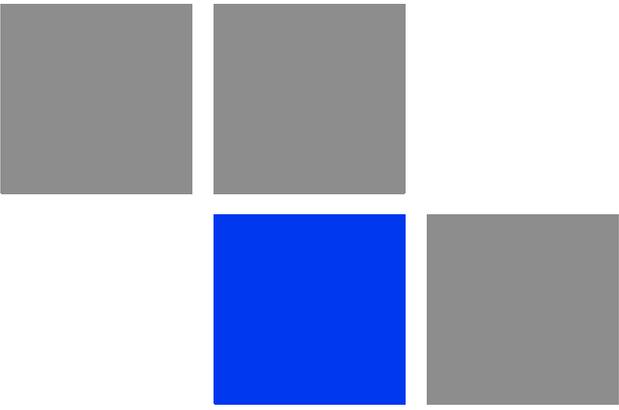
The required bandwidth is 10.72 Kbps (8.72 Kbps for Voice RTCP plus 2 Kbps for VoIP Signaling). We round it up to 11 Kbps. Thus, the required RT 11 QoS Profile parameters are:

- CIR: 11 Kbps
- CT: Short

B.5.6.3 BE QoS for Data

As stated, the recommended QoS Profile for Data is BE 64, with the following parameters:

- MIR: 64 Kbps
- CT: Medium



Glossary

AAA	Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (Pronounced "triple a."). A system (or several systems) that controls what resources users have access to, and keeps track of the activity of users over the network.
ANSI	American National Standards Institute. A voluntary organization composed of corporate, government, and other members that coordinates standards-related activities, approves U.S. national standards, and develops positions for the United States in international standards organizations.
ARP	Address Resolution Protocol. Internet protocol used to map an IP address to a MAC address. Defined in RFC 826.
ASCII	American Standard Code for Information Interchange. A code for representing English characters as numbers, with each letter assigned a number from 0 to 127.
ATM	Asynchronous Transfer Mode. A network technology that dynamically allocates bandwidth. ATM uses fixed-size data packets and a fixed channel between two points for data transfer. ATM was designed to support multiple services such as voice, graphics, data, and full-motion video. It allows service providers to dynamically assign bandwidth to individual customers.
ATPC	Automatic Transmit Power Control
AU	Access Unit
AVU	Air Ventilation Unit
BE	Best effort. A service where neither throughput nor delay guarantees are provided. The subscriber unit sends requests for bandwidth in either random access slots or dedicated transmission opportunities. The occurrence of dedicated opportunities is subject to network load, and the subscriber unit cannot rely on their presence. Service parameters include Committed Time (CT) and Maximum Information Rate (MIR).
BER	Bit Error Rate. In a digital transmission, BER is the percentage of bits with errors divided by the total number of bits that have been transmitted, received or processed over a given time period.
BPSK	Binary Phase-Shift Keying. A data transfer technique. BPSK transmits data using two phase modulation signals, one phase representing a binary one, and the other representing a binary zero. The signal is divided into bits; their status is determined by the preceding wave. If the wave changes, for example, the signal is reversed.
BST	Base Station
BW	Bandwidth
BWA	Broadband Wireless Access
CBR	Constant Bit-Rate
CG	Continuous Grant. Also known as Unsolicited Grant Services (UGS), is tailored for carrying constant bit- rate (CBR) real-time services characterized by fixed size data packets on a periodic basis such as VoIP or E1/T1. Service parameters include unsolicited grant size (packet size) and normal grant interval (sample interval).

CIR	Committed Information Rate. The rate (in bits per second) at which a network guarantees to transfer information under normal conditions, averaged over a minimum increment of time.
cPCI	Compact Peripheral Component Interface. a new standard for computer backplane architecture and peripheral integration, defined and developed by the peripheral component interconnect (PCI) industrial computers manufacturers group (PICMG). Designed to provide rugged, high-density systems.
CPE	Customer Premise Equipment. Communications equipment that resides on the customer's premises.
CPLD	Complex Programmable Logic Device
CRC	Cyclical Redundancy Check. A common technique for detecting data transmission errors, in which the frame recipient calculates a remainder by dividing frame contents by a prime binary divisor and compares the calculated remainder to a value stored in the frame by the sending equipment.
CSMA/CD	Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection. Media-access mechanisms wherein devices ready to transmit data first check the channel for a carrier. If no carrier is sensed for a specific period of time, a device can transmit. If two devices transmit at once, a collision occurs and is detected by all colliding devices. This collision subsequently delays retransmissions from those devices for some random length of time. Ethernet and IEEE 802.3 use CSMA/CD access.
CT	Committed Time. The time interval used for measuring average information transfer rates.
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. A protocol for dynamically assigning IP addresses from a pre-defined list to nodes on a network. Using DHCP to manage IP addresses simplifies client configuration and efficiently utilizes IP addresses.
DL	Down Link
DRAP	Dynamic Resources Allocation Protocol
DSCP	Differentiated Service Code Point, AKA DiffServ: An alternate use for the ToS byte in IP packets. Six bits of this byte are being reallocated for use as the DSCP field where each DSCP specifies a particular per-hop behavior that is applied to the packet.
DiffServ	See DSCP
DLI	Data Loss Indicator
EIR	Excess Information Rate. Specifies the excess rate (above the committed rate) of information that can be available to a user. The EIR is used by the traffic policing mechanism to prevent users from sending excess traffic to the network. (EIR = MIR-CIR).
EMC	Electro-Magnetic Compatibility. The capability of equipment or systems to be used in their intended environment within designed efficiency levels without causing or receiving degradation due to unintentional EMI (Electro Magnetic Interference). EMC generally encompasses all of the electromagnetic disciplines.

ETSI	European Telecommunications Standards Institute. A non-profit organization producing voluntary telecommunications standards used throughout Europe, some of which have been adopted by the EC as the technical base for Directives or Regulations.
FCC	Federal Communications Commission. A U.S. government agency that supervises, licenses, and controls electronic and electromagnetic transmission standards.
FDD	Frequency Division Duplex. Full duplex operation by using a pair of frequencies, one for transmission and one for reception.
FEC	Forward Error Correction. A method of communicating data that can correct errors in transmission on the receiving end. Prior to transmission, the data is put through a predetermined algorithm that adds extra bits specifically for error correction to any character or code block. If the transmission is received in error, the correction bits are used to check and repair the data.
FFT	Fast Fourier Transform. An algorithm for converting data from the time domain to the frequency domain; often used in signal processing.
FTP	File Transfer Protocol. A protocol for exchanging files over the Internet. FTP uses the Internet's TCP/IP protocols to enable data transfer.
G.711	A 64 Kbps PCM voice-coding technique. Described in the ITU-T standard in its G-series recommendations.
G.723.1	A compression technique that can be used for compressing speech or audio signal components at a very low bit rate as part of the H.324 family of standards. This codec has two bit rates associated with it: 5.3 and 6.3 Kbps. The higher bit rate provides a somewhat higher quality of sound. The lower bit rate provides system designers with additional flexibility. Described in the ITU-T standard in its G-series recommendations.
G.729	A compression technique where voice is coded into 8 Kbps streams. There are two variations of this standard (G.729 and G.729 Annex A) that differ mainly in computational complexity; both provide speech quality similar to 32-kbps ADPCM. Described in the ITU-T standard in its G-series recommendations.
GPS	Global Positioning System. A system that uses satellites, receivers and software to allow users to determine their precise geographic position.
H.323	A protocol suite defined by ITU-T for voice transmission over internet (Voice over IP or VoIP). In addition to voice applications, H.323 provides mechanisms for video communication and data collaboration, in combination with the ITU-T T.120 series standards.
IB	In-Band
IDU	Indoor Unit
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers. IEEE (pronounced I-triple-E) is an organization composed of engineers, scientists, and students. The IEEE is best known for developing standards for the computer and electronics industry. In particular, the IEEE 802 standards for local-area networks are widely followed.

IEEE 802.1p	A QoS method - A three-bit value that can be placed inside an 802.1Q frame tag.
IEEE 802.16	Also known as WiMAX. A group of broadband wireless communications standards for metropolitan area networks (MANs) developed by a working group of the IEEE.
IEEE 802.16a	An extension of IEEE 802.16. 802.16a operates in the 2-11GHz frequency band over a theoretical maximum range of 31 miles with a theoretical maximum data transfer rate of 70Mbps.
IEEE 802.1Q	The IEEE 802.1Q standard defines the operation of VLAN Bridges that permit the definition, operation and administration of Virtual LAN topologies within a Bridged LAN infrastructure. The 802.1Q specification establishes a standard method for inserting VLAN membership information into Ethernet frames. A tag field containing VLAN (and/or 802.1p priority) information can be inserted into an Ethernet frame, carrying VLAN membership information.
IEEE 802.3	A Local Area Network protocol suite commonly known as Ethernet. Ethernet uses Carrier Sense Multiple Access bus with Collision Detection CSMA/CD. This method allows users to share the network cable. However, only one station can use the cable at a time. A variety of physical medium dependent protocols are supported.
IEEE 802.11b	The IEEE 802.11b (also referred to as 802.11 High Rate or Wi-Fi). An extension to 802.11 standard for wireless Ethernet networks, that applies to wireless LANs and provides 11 Mbps transmission (with a fallback to 5.5, 2 and 1 Mbps) in the 2.4 GHz band.
IEEE 802.11g	An extension to 802.11 standard for wireless Ethernet networks, that applies to wireless LANs and provides 20+ Mbps in the 2.4 GHz band.
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force. One of the task forces of the IAB (Internet Architecture Board), formally called the Internet Activities Board, which is the technical body that oversees the development of the Internet suite of protocols (commonly referred to as "TCP/IP"). The IETF is responsible for solving short-term engineering needs of the Internet.
IF	Intermediate Frequency. Radio communications systems modulate a carrier frequency with a baseband signal in order to achieve radio transmission. In many cases, the carrier is not modulated directly. Instead, a lower IF signal is modulated and processed. At a later circuit stage, the IF signal is converted up to the transmission frequency band.
IP	Internet Protocol. The standard that defines how data is transmitted over the Internet. IP bundles data, including e-mail, faxes, voice calls and messages, and other types, into "packets", in order to transmit it over public and private networks.
IPsec	Security Architecture for IP Network. IP Control Protocol (IPCP) and IPv6 Control Protocol IPsec provides security services at the IP layer by enabling a system to select required security protocols, determine the algorithm(s) to use for the service(s), and put in place any cryptographic keys required to provide the requested services. IPsec can be used to protect one or more "paths" between a pair of hosts, between a pair of security gateways, or between a security gateway and a host.
ISP	Internet Service Provider

ITU-T	International Telecommunication Union - Telecommunications. An intergovernmental organization through which public and private organizations develop telecommunications. The ITU was founded in 1865 and became a United Nations agency in 1947. It is responsible for adopting international treaties, regulations and standards governing telecommunications. The standardization functions were formerly performed by a group within the ITU called CCITT, but after a 1992 reorganization the CCITT no longer exists as a separate entity.
LAN	Local area Network. A computer network limited to a small geographical area, such as a single building. The network typically links PCs as well as shared resources such as printers.
LED	Light Emitting Diode.
μBST	Micro Base Station
MAC	Media Access Control. The lower of the two sub-layers of the data link layer defined by the IEEE. The MAC sub-layer handles access to shared media, such as whether token passing or contention will be used.
MAC Address	Standardized data link layer address that is required for every port or device that connects to a LAN. Other devices in the network use these addresses to locate specific ports in the network and to create and update routing tables and data structures. MAC addresses are 6bytes long and are controlled by the IEEE.
MAN	Metropolitan Area Network. A data network designed for a town or city. In terms of geographic breadth, MANs are larger than local-area networks (LANs), but smaller than wide-area networks (WANs).
MIB	Management Information Base. A database of objects that can be monitored by a network management system. SNMP uses standardized MIB formats that allow any SNMP tools to monitor any device defined by a MIB.
MIR	Maximum Information Rate. Specifies the maximum rate of information that can be available to a user. The MIR is used by the traffic policing mechanism to prevent users from sending excess traffic to the network.
NA	Not Available or Not Applicable
NAT	Network Address Translation. Basic Network Address Translation (Basic NAT) is a method by which IP addresses are mapped from one group to another, transparent to end users. Network Address Port Translation, or NAPT is a method by which many network addresses and their TCP/UDP ports are translated into a single network address and its TCP/UDP ports. Together, these two operations, referred to as traditional NAT, provide a mechanism to connect a realm with private addresses to an external realm with globally unique registered addresses.
NIC	Network Interface Card. An expansion board you insert into a computer (or a built-in component) that enables the computer to connect to a network. Most NICs are designed for a particular type of network, protocol, and media, although some can serve multiple networks.
NIU	Network Interface Unit

NLOS	Non Line Of Sight. A term referring to wireless services which don't require a clear open path between sites.
NMS	Network Management System. A system responsible for managing at least part of a network. An NMS is generally a reasonably powerful and well-equipped computer, such as an engineering workstation. NMSs communicate with agents to help keep track of network statistics and resources.
NOC	Network Operations Center. The physical space from which a typically large telecommunications network is managed, monitored and supervised.
NPU	Network Processing Unit
NRT	Non Real Time. is very similar to the Real-Time polling service except that connections may utilize random access transmit opportunities for sending bandwidth requests. These Non Real Time Variable Bit Rate (NRT-VBR) services, such as file transfer and Internet access with a minimum guaranteed rate, are characterized by requirement for a guaranteed rate, but can tolerate longer delays and are rather insensitive to jitter. Service parameters include CIR, Committed Time (CT), and MIR that limit the rate as otherwise bandwidth intensive services may expand to occupy full bandwidth.
OA&M	Operation, Administration & Maintenance. Provides the facilities and the personnel required to manage a network.
ODU	Outdoor Unit
OFDM	Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing: A method for multiplexing signals, which divides the available bandwidth into a series of frequencies known as tones. Orthogonal tones do not interfere with each other when the peak of one tone corresponds with the null. The rapid switching, frequency-hopping technique is intended to allow more robust data service.
OOB	Out-Of-Band
PER	Packet Error Rate. In a digital transmission, PER is the percentage of packets with errors divided by the total number of packets that have been transmitted, received or processed over a given time period.
PHY	PHYSical Layer. The physical, or lowest, layer of the OSI Network Model. In a wireless network, the PHY defines parameters such as data rates, modulation method, signaling parameters, transmitter/receiver synchronization, etc. Within an actual radio implementation, the PHY corresponds to the radio front end and baseband signal processing sections.
PIU	Power Interface Unit
POTS	Plain Old Telephone System. A basic analog telephone equipment.
PSU	Power Supply Unit

PPPoE	Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet. PPPoE relies on two widely accepted standards: PPP and Ethernet. PPPoE is a specification for connecting the users on an Ethernet to the Internet through a common broadband medium, such as a single DSL line, wireless device or cable modem. All the users over the Ethernet share a common connection, so the Ethernet principles supporting multiple users in a LAN combines with the principles of PPP, which apply to serial connections.
QAM	Quadrature Amplitude Modulation. A technique used in wireless applications to double the available bandwidth by combining two amplitude-modulated signals. The two combined signals differ in phase by 90 degrees; this technique doubles the bandwidth by combining the two signals at the source before transmission, transmitting digital data at a rate of 4 bits per signal change.
QoS	Quality of Service. Measure of performance for a transmission system that reflects its transmission quality and service availability.
QPSK	Quadrature Phase Shift Keying. A data transfer technique used in coaxial cable networks that sends data using modulating signals. Four different phases represent data, with each signal's information determined by the signal before it. For example, if a phase stays the same from one signal to the other, the information has not changed.
RF	Radio frequency. An AC signal of high enough frequency to be used for wireless communications.
RFC	Request For Comments. The name of the result and the process for creating a standard on the Internet. New standards are proposed and published on the Internet, as a Request For Comments. The proposal is reviewed by the Internet Engineering Task Force.
RSSI	Received Signal Strength Indicator. A signal or circuit that indicates the strength of the incoming (received) signal in a receiver.
R&TTE	Radio & Telecommunications Terminal Equipment. The R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC governs the marketing and use of R&TTE equipment. With the exception of a few categories of equipment, the Directive covers all equipment, which uses the radio frequency spectrum. It also covers all terminal equipment attached to public telecommunication networks.
RT	Real Time. Real Time service is designed to meet the needs of Real Time Variable Bit Rate (RT-VBR) like services characterized by requirements for guaranteed rate and delay such as streaming video or audio. These services are dynamic in nature, but offer periodic dedicated requests opportunities to meet real-time requirements. Because the subscriber equipment issues explicit requests, the protocol overhead and latency is increased, but capacity is granted only according to the real needs of the connection. Service parameters include CIR and CT.
RTCP	RTP Control Protocol. A protocol that monitors the QoS of an RTP connection and conveys information about the on-going session.

RTP	Real Time Protocol. An Internet protocol for transmitting real-time data such as audio and video. RTP itself does not guarantee real-time delivery of data, but it does provide mechanisms for the sending and receiving applications to support streaming data. Typically, RTP runs on top of the UDP protocol, although the specification is general enough to support other transport protocols.
Rx	Receive
SIP	Session Initiation Protocol. An application-layer control IETF protocol that can establish, modify, and terminate multimedia sessions such as Internet telephony calls (VoIP). SIP can also invite participants to already existing sessions, such as multicast conferences. Media can be added to (and removed from) an existing session. SIP transparently supports name mapping and redirection services, which supports personal mobility - users can maintain a single externally visible identifier regardless of their network location.
SLA	Service Level Agreement. A contract between a service provider and the end user, which stipulates and commits the service provider to a required level of service. An SLA relates to issues such as specified level of service, support options, enforcement or penalty provisions for services not provided, a guaranteed level of system performance as relates to downtime or uptime, a specified level of customer support and what software or hardware will be provided and for what fee.
SME	Small and Medium-sized Enterprises. SMEs are small-scale entrepreneurial private enterprises: they are usually defined as having less than 250 employees, but most have far fewer.
SNAP	Sub Network Access Protocol
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol. A network management protocol that provides a means to monitor and control network devices, and to manage configurations, statistics collection, performance, and security. SNMP works by sending messages, called protocol data units (PDUs), to different parts of a network. SNMP-compliant devices, called agents, store data about themselves in Management Information Bases (MIBs) and return this data to the SNMP requesters.
SNR	Signal to Noise Ratio. The ratio of the amplitude of a desired analog or digital data signal to the amplitude of noise in a transmission channel at a specific point in time. SNR is typically expressed logarithmically in decibels (dB). SNR measures the quality of a transmission channel or a signal over a network channel. The greater the ratio, the easier it is to identify and subsequently isolate and eliminate the effects of noise. SNR also is abbreviated as S/N.
SOHO	Small Office Home Office. A term that refers to the small or home office environment and the business culture that surrounds it. Typically it refers to an office or business with ten or fewer computers and/or employees.
SRC	Source
SU	Subscriber Unit

TCP	Transmission Control Protocol. Connection-oriented transport layer protocol that provides reliable full-duplex data transmission. TCP is the part of the TCP/IP suite of protocols that is responsible for forming data connections between nodes that are reliable, as opposed to IP, which is connectionless and unreliable.
TCP/IP	Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. A set of protocols developed by the U.S. Department of Defense to allow communication between dissimilar networks and systems over long distances. TCP/IP is the de facto standard for data transmission over networks, including the Internet.
TDM	Time Division Multiplexing. Technique in which information from multiple channels can be allocated bandwidth on a single link based on pre-assigned time slots. Bandwidth is allocated to each channel regardless of whether the station has data to transmit.
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol. Simplified version of FTP that allows files to be transferred from one computer to another over a network, usually without the use of client authentication.
TTL	Time To Live
Tx	Transmit
U	A unit for measuring the height in rack cabinets. 1U = 1.75 inches.
UDP	User Datagram Protocol. Connectionless transport layer protocol in the TCP/IP protocol stack. UDP is a simple protocol that exchanges datagrams without acknowledgments or guaranteed delivery, requiring that error processing and retransmission be handled by other protocols. UDP is defined in RFC 768.
UL	Up Link
VLAN	Virtual Local Area Network. A group of devices on one or more LANs that are configured with the same VLAN ID so that they can communicate as if they were attached to the same wire, when in fact they are located on a number of different LAN segments. Used also to create separation between different user groups.
VLSI	Very Large Scale Integration. The process of placing thousands (or hundreds of thousands) of electronic components on a single chip.
VoIP	Voice over Internet Protocol. Provides an advanced digital communications network that bypasses the traditional public switched telephone system and uses the Internet to transmit voice communication. VoIP enables people to use the Internet as the transmission medium for telephone calls by sending voice data in packets using IP rather than by traditional circuit switched transmissions of the PSTN.
VPL	Virtual Private Link. A virtual connection between two points on the network, such as a base station and a service provider or corporate network. Identified by the VPL ID, with functionality that is similar to VLAN ID (VLAN on the backbone network).

VPN	Virtual Private Network. A private network of computers that's at least partially connected by public lines. A good example would be a private office LAN that allows users to log in remotely over the Internet (an open, public system). VPNs use encryption and secure protocols like PPTP to ensure that data transmissions are not intercepted by unauthorized parties.
WAN	Wide Area Network. A computer network that spans a relatively large geographical area. Wide area networks can be made up of interconnected smaller networks spread throughout a building, a state, or the entire globe.
WEEE	Waste Electronic and Electrical Equipment. The purpose of Directive 2002/96/EC on waste electrical and electronic equipment (WEEE) is, as a first priority, the prevention of waste electrical and electronic equipment (WEEE), and in addition, the reuse, recycling and other forms of recovery of such wastes so as to reduce the disposal of waste. It also seeks to improve the environmental performance of all operators involved in the life cycle of electrical and electronic equipment, e.g. producers, distributors and consumers and in particular those operators directly involved in the treatment of waste electrical and electronic equipment.
WIMAX	The name commonly given to the IEEE 802.16 standard. Specifications for fixed broadband wireless metropolitan access networks (MANs) that use a point-to-multipoint architecture. WIMAX supports very high bit rates in both uploading to and downloading from a base station up to a distance of 30 miles.